

Thank you for choosing the Great Wall vehicle.

The more familiar you become with your vehicle, the more you will like it and the better you will be able to use its features. Therefore, you are kindly required to: Read this manual carefully before using your vehicle. There are important tips about using your vehicle in this manual that will help you make the best use of your vehicle technology. Additionally, you will get very useful information about driving safety, road safety and maintenance of your vehicle value.

We sincerely wish you a safe and happy journey!

12/05/2025

Overview

Contain instructions for use, explanation of symbol meanings, etc.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For specific configuration information, please refer to relevant sales materials or consult your vehicle dealer.

In a right-hand drive vehicle, the actual position of some operating elements may be different from that shown in the illustration.

Accessories, spare parts and modifications

Now we can buy not only genuine parts, but also a variety of other non-genuine parts and accessories that are suitable for our vehicle. The use of non-authentic spare parts and accessories may adversely affect vehicle safety, even if these products have been approved by the relevant national or regional authorities. Great Wall Motors do not afford any responsibility and do not offer any warranty certificate if the owner decides to install or replace non-authentic spare parts and accessories.

It is forbidden to modify vehicles with non-authentic products. Modifications with non-authentic products may affect vehicle operability, safety or durability and may even violate government regulations. In addition, vehicle damage and performance issues arising from modification are not covered by warranty of quality.

It is forbidden to modify suspension, braking system and so on, which may adversely affect the operate safety of vehicle.

It is forbidden to modify the fuse box of the vehicle. Otherwise, the electrical system may be adversely affected.

Modification to electronic components, software and circuits will affect their function and the normal operation of other related components, especially safety-related systems. These modifications will affect the operation safety of the vehicle and increase the risk of accidents and injury. Therefore, please do not modify pipeline, electrical parts and software.

Validity of this manual

All information provided in this manual is up to date at the time of publication. However, due to continuous improvement of the product, the contents of this manual will be updated at any time without notice.

Depending on the vehicle specifications, vehicles shown in the figure may differ from your vehicle.

The display information (including pictures, icons, texts and so on) included in this manual are only for instructions. According to the vehicle model configuration, software version and theme settings, the actual information displayed may be different. Refer to the actual model for specific information.

About symbols

WARNING

This indicates a warning.

Failure to observe these warnings may result in serious injury or death. Such warnings tell you what to do or what not to do so as to reduce the risk of serious injuries or death.

CAUTION

This indicates a caution.

Failure to observe these cautions may result in damage to the vehicle or its equipment. Such cautions tell you what to do or what not to do so as to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle and its equipment.

NOTICE

This indicates a reminder.

Such tips contain helpful information that may be useful to you.

(▷ Page X)

This symbol indicates that more details can be seen on this page.

Tips for safety

WARNING

General precautions for your driving:

- ▷ Drive only when fully alert: the alcohol, drug, medicine or anesthetic will slow down driver's response time and affect judgment and coordination, which makes the vehicle get out of control and results in severe safety accidents.
- ▷ Drive carefully: be sure to drive carefully. Always keep an eye on improper movements of other drivers or pedestrians on the road so as to make timely judgments and prevent accidents.

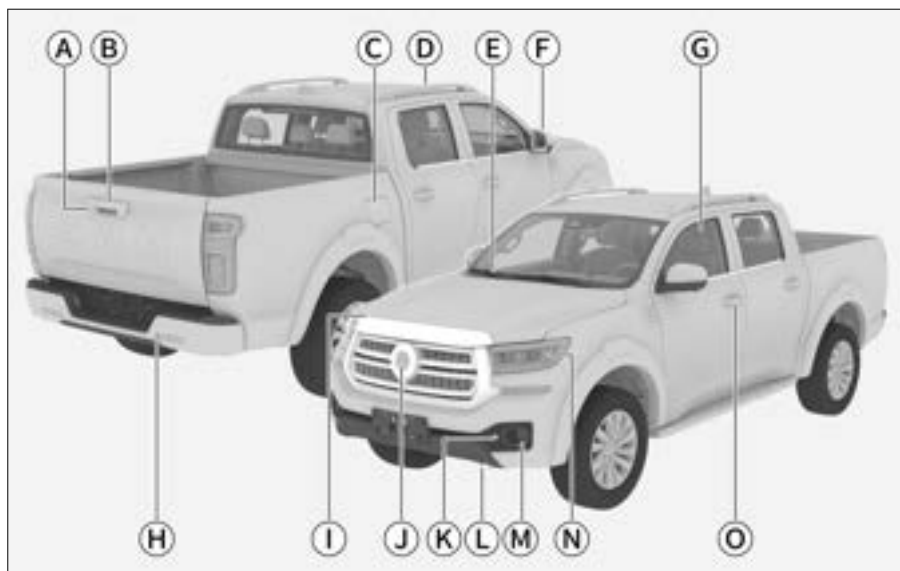
- › Concentrate on driving: be attentive when driving. Anything that distracts the driver's attention, such as adjusting control buttons, call up and answer a mobile phone or reading, may give rise to a crash accident and serious injury to you, passengers on the vehicle and other people.

WARNING

When getting out of the vehicle, do not leave children, pets or someone who needs help in the vehicle alone.

- › Because the children, pets or someone who needs help cannot get out of the vehicle and save themselves. The temperature in the vehicle may be too high or too low in different weather, which may cause the passengers or pets in the vehicle injury even death.
- › If the children or pets touch the key, it may cause the vehicle to move on its own and pose a danger to themselves and traffic conditions, including starting the vehicle, releasing the parking brake, shifting gears, operating the doors and windows.

Appearance (type I)



AD7C175286C3

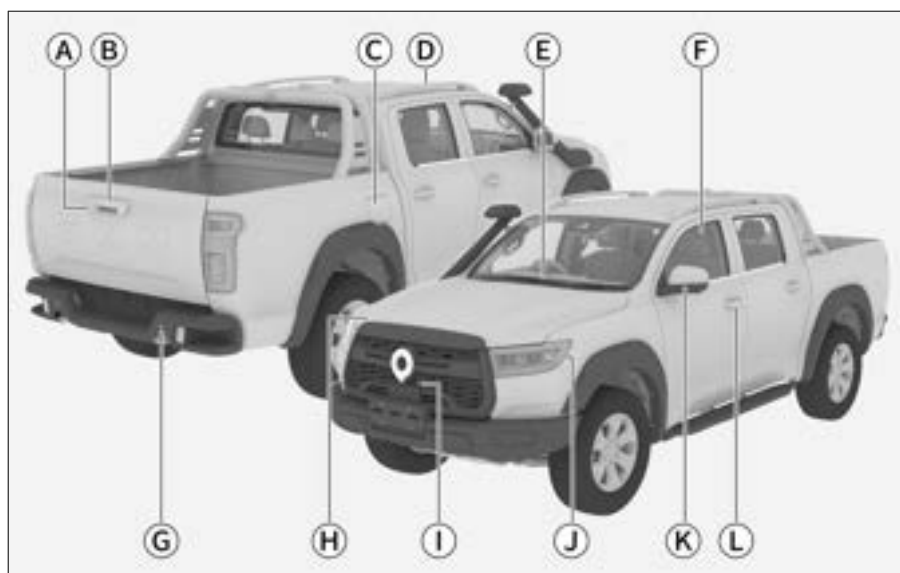
- Ⓐ Camera, used for:
Reverse camera 153
Around view monitor (AVM) 154
- Ⓑ Tailgate handle 34
- Ⓒ Fuel tank door 48
- Ⓓ Roof rack 66
- Ⓔ Automatic front wiper 76
- Ⓕ Side mirror 61
- Ⓖ Window 39
- Ⓗ Collision avoidance radar 153
- Ⓘ Bonnet 46
- Ⓙ Camera, used for:
Around view monitor (AVM) 154
- Ⓚ Collision avoidance radar 153
- Ⓛ Front tow hook 291
- Ⓜ Front fog light 69
- Ⓝ Combination headlight 69
- Ⓞ Door lock 30

i NOTICE

The appearance of some models is slightly different from this figure. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Single-row models can be used as a reference.

Appearance (type II)



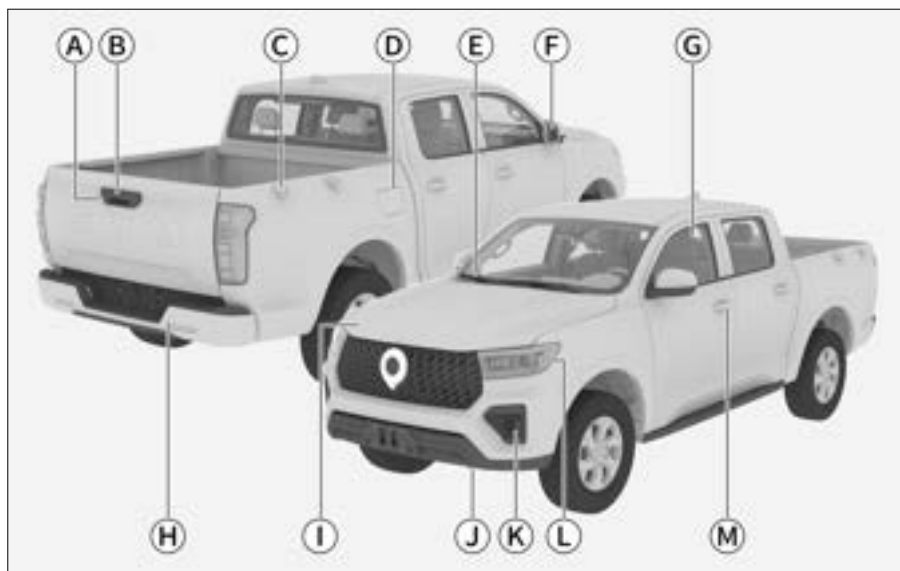
5660EA7B01B1

- Ⓐ Camera, used for:
Reverse camera 153
Around view monitor (AVM) 154
- Ⓑ Tailgate handle 34
- Ⓒ Fuel tank door 48
- Ⓓ Roof rack 66
- Ⓔ Automatic front wiper 76
- Ⓕ Window 39
- Ⓖ Collision avoidance radar 153
- Ⓗ Bonnet 46
- Ⓘ Camera, used for:
Around view monitor (AVM) 154
- Ⓙ Combination headlight 69
- Ⓚ Side mirror 61
- Ⓛ Door lock 30

i NOTICE

The appearance of some models is slightly different from this figure. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Appearance (type III)



DC0946C0BC20

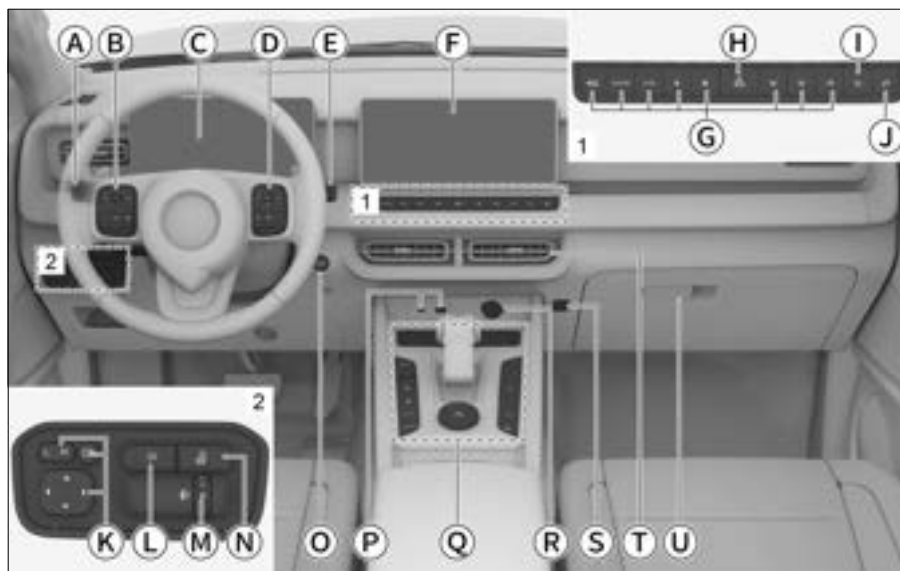
- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| Ⓐ Camera, used for: Reverse camera 153 | Ⓔ Window 39 |
| Ⓑ Tailgate handle 34 | Ⓕ Collision avoidance radar 153 |
| Ⓒ Truck bed rope hook | Ⓖ Bonnet 46 |
| Ⓓ Fuel tank door 48 | Ⓗ Front tow hook 291 |
| Ⓔ Automatic front wiper 76 | Ⓙ Front fog light 69 |
| Ⓕ Side mirror 61 | Ⓛ Combination headlight 69 |
| | Ⓜ Door lock 30 |

i NOTICE

The appearance of some models is slightly different from this figure. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Single-row models can be used as a reference.

Interior trim (left-hand drive model type I)



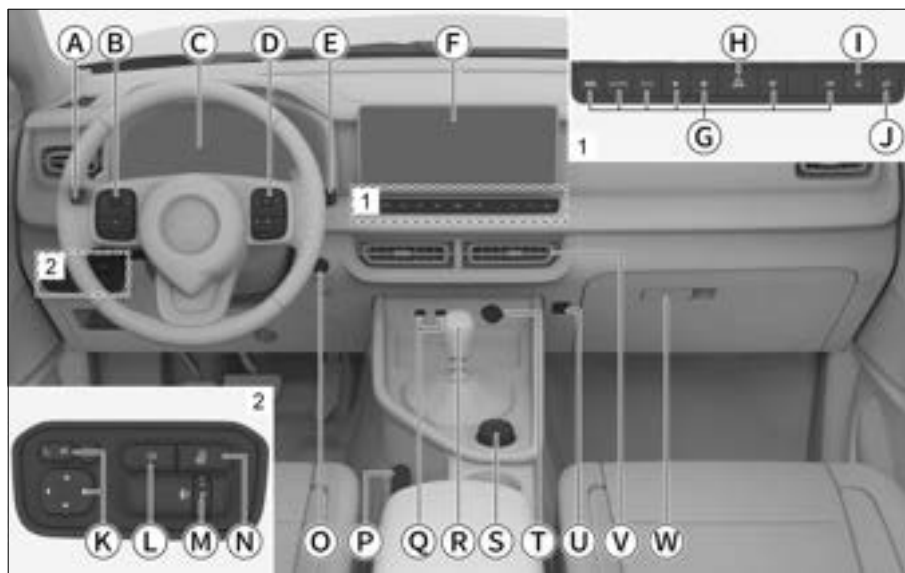
33E25B0EE813

- Ⓐ Light control combination switch 69
- Ⓑ Steering wheel left button can be used for:
Blind spot imaging system 157
Audio visual system 232
Intelligent driving assist 169
- Ⓒ Instrument panel 206
Instrument panel indicator lights 218
- Ⓓ Steering wheel right button can be used for:
Instrument panel adjustment 207
Audio visual system 232
- Ⓔ Wiper control combination switch 76
- Ⓕ Multimedia display screen 236
- Ⓖ A/C button 83
- Ⓗ Emergency flasher switch 73
- Ⓘ Seat setting button 53
- Ⓙ Hill descent control system (HDC) 196
- Ⓚ Side mirrors adjusting button 61
- Ⓛ DPF regeneration button 201
- Ⓜ Headlight height adjustment knob 74
- Ⓝ Electronic stability control button 197
- Ⓞ Power supply switch 114
- Ⓟ USB port (multimedia) 233
USB port (power supply) 93
- Ⓠ Auxiliary instrument panel button 14
- Ⓡ Standby power supply (12 V) port 93
- Ⓢ Luggage hook 93

① A/C outlet 86

② Glove box 90

Interior trim (left-hand drive model type II)



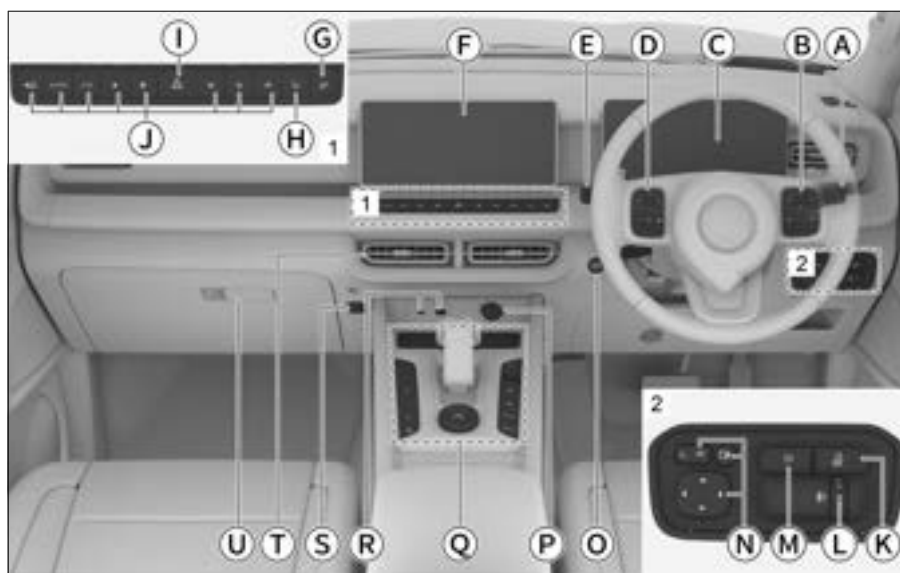
3460062408C4

- Ⓐ Light control combination switch 69
- Ⓑ Steering wheel left button can be used for:
Blind spot imaging system 157
Audio visual system 232
- Ⓒ Instrument panel 212
Instrument panel indicator lights 218
- Ⓓ Steering wheel right button can be used for:
Instrument panel adjustment 213
Audio visual system 232
- Ⓔ Wiper control combination switch 76
- Ⓕ Multimedia display screen 236
- Ⓖ A/C button 83
- Ⓗ Emergency flasher switch 73
- Ⓙ Rear axle differential lock button 147
- Ⓜ Hill descent control system (HDC) 196
- Ⓚ Side mirrors adjusting button 61
- Ⓛ DPF regeneration button 201
- Ⓜ Headlight height adjustment knob 74
- Ⓝ Electronic stability control button 196
- Ⓞ Power supply switch 114
- Ⓟ Manual parking brake 119
- Ⓠ USB port (multimedia) 233
USB port (power supply) 93
- Ⓡ Shift lever (MT) 123
- Ⓢ 4WD system knob 144
- Ⓣ Standby power supply (12 V) port 93
- Ⓤ Luggage hook 93

⑤ A/C outlet 86

⑥ Glove box 90

Interior trim (right-hand drive model)



F97BBF41BA41

- Ⓐ Light control combination switch 69
- Ⓑ Steering wheel right button can be used for:
Instrument panel adjustment 207
Audio visual system 232
- Ⓒ Instrument panel 206
Instrument panel indicator lights 218
- Ⓓ Steering wheel left button can be used for:
Blind spot imaging system 157
Audio visual system 232
Intelligent driving assist 169
- Ⓔ Wiper control combination switch 76
- Ⓕ Multimedia display screen 236
- Ⓖ Hill descent control system (HDC) 196
- Ⓗ Seat setting button 53
- Ⓘ Emergency flasher switch 73
- Ⓙ A/C button 83
- Ⓚ Electronic stability control button 196
- Ⓛ Headlight height adjustment knob 74
- Ⓜ DPF regeneration button 201
- Ⓝ Side mirrors adjusting button 61
- Ⓞ Power supply switch 114
- Ⓟ Standby power supply (12 V) port 93
- Ⓠ Auxiliary instrument panel button 15
- Ⓡ USB port (multimedia) 233
USB port (power supply) 93
- Ⓢ Luggage hook 93

① A/C outlet 86

② Glove box 90

i NOTICE

MT models are slightly different from this figure. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Auxiliary instrument panel (left-hand drive AT model)



- Ⓐ USB port (multimedia) 233
USB port (power supply) 93
- Ⓑ Mobile phone wireless charging 88
- Ⓒ 12 V-1 power supply switch 93
- Ⓓ Parking brake switch 120
- Ⓔ Auto vehicle hold switch 120
- Ⓕ 12 V-2 power supply switch 93
- Ⓖ 12 V-3 power supply switch 93
- Ⓗ Standby power supply (12 V)
port 93
- Ⓘ Shift lever 127
- Ⓙ Rear axle differential lock button 147
- Ⓚ 4L button 132
- Ⓛ Around view monitor button 154
- Ⓜ Driving mode knob 132

Auxiliary instrument panel (right-hand drive AT model)



A265315D62A4

- | | |
|--|--|
| Ⓐ Standby power supply (12 V) port 93 | Ⓜ Shift lever 127 |
| Ⓑ Mobile phone wireless charging 88 | Ⓝ Off-road cruise control button 189 |
| Ⓒ 12 V-1 power supply switch 93 | Ⓚ Steering assist button 192 |
| Ⓓ Parking brake switch 120 | Ⓛ Rear axle differential lock button 147 |
| Ⓔ Auto vehicle hold switch 120 | Ⓜ Front axle differential lock but- ton 149 |
| Ⓕ 12 V-2 power supply switch 93 | Ⓝ Around view monitor button 154 |
| Ⓖ 12 V-3 power supply switch 93 | Ⓞ Driving mode knob 132 |
| Ⓗ USB port (multimedia) 233 | All-terrain knob 138 |
| USB port (power supply) 93 | |



Table of contents

1 Operation

This Chapter introduces the method for operating on-board vehicle equipment, such as keys, doors, windows and seats.

2 Driving

This Chapter introduces the driving information, such as vehicle start, gear shifting and instrument of the vehicle.

3 Audiovisual system

This Chapter introduces the Bluetooth telephone, system setting and other audio-visual system related information.

4 Safety

This Chapter introduces the functional equipment, such as anti-theft system and seat belts.

5 Emergency

This Chapter introduces the treatment methods for vehicle failures such as flat tyre and battery loss.

6 Maintenance

This Chapter introduces the routine inspection and regular maintenance of the vehicle.

7 Technical data

This Chapter introduces the vehicle parameters, identification number and other information.

8 Index

This Chapter introduces the alphabetical index in this manual.

Operation

| | |
|---|----|
| Keys..... | 26 |
| About the key | 26 |
| Key buttons introduction..... | 26 |
| Key battery replacement | 27 |
| Door lock..... | 30 |
| Locking and unlocking through the PEPS | 30 |
| Locking and unlocking with key but- tons | 31 |
| Locking and unlocking with central control buttons | 31 |
| Unlocking with the interior handle | 31 |
| Locking and unlocking with the me- chanical key | 32 |
| Emergency lock | 32 |
| Child safety lock | 32 |
| Automatic resetting | 33 |
| Flameout unlocking | 33 |
| Auto driving lock | 33 |
| Auto unlock upon collision | 33 |
| Truck..... | 34 |
| Opening and closing the tailgate...34 | |
| Tailgate footboard | 35 |
| Opening and closing the canopy (flat cover type) | 36 |
| About loading goods | 38 |
| Windows | 39 |
| Window settings..... | 39 |

| | |
|--|----|
| Driver window switch | 39 |
| Passenger side window switches .. | 41 |
| Thermal protection function | 41 |
| Delay function | 41 |
| Anti-pinch function | 41 |
| Window initialisation | 41 |
| Sunroof..... | 43 |
| Opening and closing the sunroof .. | 43 |
| Opening and closing the sunroof vi- sor | 44 |
| Anti-pinch function | 44 |
| Thermal protection function | 45 |
| Sunroof initialisation | 45 |
| Bonnet..... | 46 |
| Opening the bonnet | 46 |
| Closing the bonnet | 46 |
| Refuelling | 48 |
| Refuelling method | 48 |
| Fuel information | 49 |
| AdBlue filling..... | 51 |
| Refuelling method | 51 |
| AdBlue information | 52 |
| Seats | 53 |
| Front seat heating/ventilation..... | 53 |
| Headrests..... | 54 |
| Manual seat adjustment..... | 55 |
| Electric seat adjustment | 56 |
| Front armrest | 57 |
| Rear seat adjustment (integral type) | 57 |

| | |
|--|----|
| Rear seat adjustment (split type)... | 59 |
| Rearview mirrors | 61 |
| Manual anti-glare interior rearview mirror | 61 |
| Automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror..... | 61 |
| Adjusting the side mirrors | 61 |
| Steering wheel..... | 64 |
| Steering wheel adjustment | 64 |
| Steering wheel heating | 64 |
| Steering wheel not aligned | 65 |
| Horn..... | 65 |
| Roof rack | 66 |
| Roof rack | 66 |
| Light control | 68 |
| Light settings | 68 |
| Light control combination switch .. | 69 |
| Daytime running light..... | 73 |
| Front fog lights auxiliary lighting ... | 73 |
| Emergency brake flasher | 73 |
| Hazard warning lights | 73 |
| Light height adjustment..... | 74 |
| Interior lights | 74 |
| Wiper control..... | 76 |
| Front wiper washing setting | 76 |
| Auto wipers..... | 76 |
| Front wiper heating | 80 |
| A/C system | 81 |
| Vehicle equipment..... | 81 |
| A/C setting interface | 81 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| A/C control panel | 83 |
| A/C control | 84 |
| A/C outlet | 86 |
| Mobile phone wireless charging..... | 88 |
| Mobile phone wireless charging.... | 88 |
| Interior equipment | 90 |
| Sun visor..... | 90 |
| Vanity mirror..... | 90 |
| Storage devices | 90 |
| Luggage hook | 93 |
| Power supply port | 93 |

Driving

| | |
|--|-----|
| Driving procedures | 98 |
| Before driving..... | 98 |
| Precautions for driving..... | 99 |
| Precautions for passengers..... | 101 |
| Parking the vehicle | 102 |
| Economic driving..... | 102 |
| Advice on driving in harsh environments..... | 104 |
| Driving in foggy weather | 104 |
| Driving in the rain | 104 |
| Fording drive..... | 105 |
| In hot weather | 106 |
| Driving in cold weather | 107 |
| Advice on driving during break-in period | 112 |
| Transmission (9AT) | 112 |
| Tyres | 112 |
| Brake pad..... | 112 |

| | | | |
|--|-----|---|-----|
| Power supply switch..... | 114 | All-terrain control system | 138 |
| Power supply mode switching | 114 | Off-road expert mode..... | 143 |
| Steering wheel unlock..... | 115 | Off-road expert mode | 143 |
| Starting and shutting down the vehicle | 116 | 4WD system..... | 144 |
| Starting the vehicle | 116 | 4WD system (electronic control part-time 4WD) | 144 |
| Shutting down the vehicle | 117 | Differential lock switch..... | 147 |
| Parking brake | 119 | Differential lock introduction | 147 |
| Tips for safety | 119 | Rear axle differential lock | 147 |
| Manual parking brake | 119 | Front axle differential lock..... | 149 |
| Electronic parking brake | 120 | Parking assist system | 151 |
| Gear shifting (MT) | 123 | Parking assist system sensor | 151 |
| Introduction to gear positions | 123 | Collision avoidance radar | 153 |
| Gear shifting method | 123 | Reverse camera..... | 153 |
| Starting off and stopping..... | 124 | Around view monitor (AVM) | 154 |
| Gear shifting (AT) | 126 | Parking setting..... | 156 |
| Introduction to gear positions | 126 | Blind spot imaging system | 157 |
| Gear shifting | 127 | Blind spot imaging system | 157 |
| Unlocking P gear position in an emergency | 128 | Tyre pressure monitoring system .. | 159 |
| Crawling function..... | 130 | Tyre pressure monitoring system | 159 |
| Starting off and stopping..... | 130 | Fatigue driving reminder system.... | 161 |
| Steering wheel assist modes..... | 131 | Fatigue driving reminder | 161 |
| Steering wheel assist modes..... | 131 | Cruise control..... | 163 |
| Driving modes | 132 | Cruise control | 163 |
| Driving mode (intelligent electronic control 4WD)..... | 132 | Intelligent driving assist system..... | 166 |
| Driving mode (electronic control part-time 4WD)..... | 134 | Intelligent driving assist system sensor | 166 |
| All-terrain control system | 138 | Forward assist system..... | 169 |
| | | Lane assist system | 172 |

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Rear side assist system | 174 |
| Traffic sign information..... | 177 |
| Adaptive cruise control system... | 178 |
| Intelligent cruise control system | 183 |
| Off-road cruise control assist system | |
| | 189 |
| Off-road cruise control assist..... | 189 |
| Steering assist | 192 |
| Steering assist (The Tank turning) | |
| | 192 |
| Driving assist system..... | 194 |
| Driving assist system safety tips. | 194 |
| Anti-lock brake system..... | 194 |
| Electronic braking force distribution | |
| system | 195 |
| Braking force assist system..... | 195 |
| Traction control system | 195 |
| Rollover prevention system..... | 195 |
| Secondary collision mitigation sys- | |
| tem..... | 195 |
| HHC (Hill-start Hold Control)..... | 195 |
| Hill descent control system (HDC) | |
| | 196 |
| Electronic stability control system | |
| | 196 |
| Dynamic stability tracing system | 197 |
| Emission control system..... | 199 |
| Reminder..... | 199 |
| Oxygen sensor..... | 199 |
| Catalytic converter | 199 |
| Exhaust gas recirculator | 200 |

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Turbocharger | 200 |
| Fuel evaporation control unit..... | 200 |
| Crankcase emission control unit | 200 |
| High pressure common rail system | |
| | 200 |
| On-board diagnostic system | 200 |
| AdBlue injection control system. | 201 |
| Diesel particulate filter | 201 |
| Gasoline particulate filter | 204 |
| Instrument panel (type I) | 206 |
| Instrument panel overview | 206 |
| Steering wheel buttons..... | 207 |
| Driving data interface..... | 208 |
| Menu setting interface | 209 |
| Warning message interface..... | 210 |
| Instrument panel colour setting. | 211 |
| Instrument panel (type II)..... | 212 |
| Instrument panel overview | 212 |
| Steering wheel buttons..... | 213 |
| Driving data interface..... | 214 |
| Menu setting interface | 215 |
| Warning message interface..... | 215 |
| Instrument panel colour setting. | 216 |
| Instrument panel indicator lights... | 218 |
| Instrument panel indicator lights | 218 |

Audiovisual system

| | |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Safety prompts..... | 230 |
| Tips for safety | 230 |
| About the use | 230 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| About the radio | 230 |
| About USB storage devices | 230 |
| About Bluetooth..... | 231 |
| Panel introduction..... | 232 |
| Steering wheel buttons..... | 232 |
| External devices | 233 |
| Function introduction | 235 |
| Multimedia display screen status bar | 235 |
| Home and menu interface | 236 |
| Shortcut panel..... | 237 |
| Local media..... | 238 |
| Bluetooth phone | 240 |
| Mobile phone interaction | 241 |
| Voice control..... | 243 |
| System setting..... | 245 |

Safety

| | |
|--|-----|
| Seat belts | 250 |
| Safety tips..... | 250 |
| Wear the seat belt properly..... | 251 |
| Pretensioner seat belts | 252 |
| Three-point seat belt instructions | 253 |
| How to use the rear middle three-point seat belt | 253 |
| Airbags | 255 |
| Tips for safety..... | 255 |
| Positions of airbags | 256 |
| Front airbags | 256 |
| Side airbag | 258 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Curtain airbags..... | 259 |
| Far-end airbag | 260 |
| Child restraint system..... | 262 |
| Safety instructions for child seat | 262 |
| Fixing points for a child seat | 263 |
| Recommended child seat type ... | 263 |
| Installation of a child seat..... | 265 |
| Vehicle anti-theft system | 268 |
| System introduction | 268 |
| Instructions..... | 268 |
| Fuel shutoff system | 269 |
| Fuel cut-off system | 269 |
| Event data recorder..... | 270 |
| System description | 270 |
| Data reading | 270 |
| Data disclosure..... | 271 |

Emergency

| | |
|---|-----|
| On-board tools..... | 274 |
| Location of on-board tools | 274 |
| Vehicle lifting | 276 |
| Vehicle lifting position | 276 |
| Spare tyre..... | 277 |
| Taking out and replacing the spare tyre | 277 |
| Replacing the spare tyre | 279 |
| Tyre failure symptom | 279 |
| Preparation for spare tyre replacement..... | 279 |
| How to replace the spare tyre | 280 |
| In case of a vehicle accident..... | 284 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Traffic incidents occur to the vehicle | 284 |
| A vehicle getting stuck or bottoming out | 284 |
| Jump start | 286 |
| Symptoms of a drained vehicle battery | 286 |
| Jump start method | 286 |
| Engine overheating | 288 |
| Engine overheating | 288 |
| Towing | 290 |
| Using a professional vehicle to tow | 290 |
| Tow hook | 291 |
| Tow rope | 292 |
| Towing with the tow hook | 292 |
| Electric winch | 294 |
| System introduction | 294 |
| Instructions | 294 |
| Emergency rescue system | 299 |
| Emergency rescue system | 299 |

Maintenance

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Necessity of vehicle maintenance .. | 304 |
| Engine compartment | 305 |
| Safety tips | 305 |
| Fluid level | 305 |
| Engine oil | 306 |
| Engine coolant | 308 |
| Brake fluid | 308 |
| Power steering fluid | 309 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Windscreen washer fluid | 309 |
| Radiator and fan | 310 |
| Battery | 310 |
| Safety signs and labels | 311 |
| Radiator cover warning label | 311 |
| Engine compartment warning label | 311 |
| Battery warning label | 311 |
| Part replacement | 313 |
| Fuse replacement | 313 |
| Front wiper blade replacement (type I) | 315 |
| Front wiper blade replacement (type II) | 316 |
| Lights | 317 |
| Vehicle maintenance | 319 |
| Tyre maintenance | 319 |
| Sunroof maintenance | 322 |
| Protection films for new vehicles .. | 323 |
| Exterior maintenance | 323 |
| Interior maintenance | 326 |
| Anti-corrosion measures | 329 |
| Long-term storage of the vehicle .. | 330 |

Technical data

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle identification | 332 |
| Vehicle identification number | 332 |
| Engine number | 333 |
| Overall parameters | 334 |
| Power parameters | 334 |
| Tyre specifications | 334 |

Wheel parameters 335

Suspension specifications 335

Brake parameters 336

Fluid parameters..... 336

Index

Alphabetical index 342

1

Operation

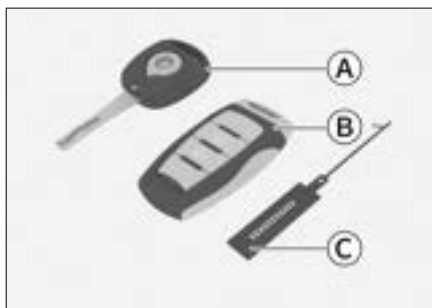
| | |
|---|----|
| Keys | 26 |
| Door lock..... | 30 |
| Truck..... | 34 |
| Windows | 39 |
| Sunroof | 43 |
| Bonnet..... | 46 |
| Refuelling | 48 |
| AdBlue filling | 51 |
| Seats | 53 |
| Rearview mirrors | 61 |
| Steering wheel | 64 |
| Roof rack..... | 66 |
| Light control | 68 |
| Wiper control | 76 |
| A/C system..... | 81 |
| Mobile phone wireless charging | 88 |
| Interior equipment..... | 90 |

Keys

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

About the key



6409612A9DB8

- Ⓐ Straight mechanical key
- Ⓑ Smart key
- Ⓒ Key number tag

i NOTICE

- › Store the key number tag in a safe place. The key number tag has a code necessary for getting a mechanical key. You may only request a new mechanical key from the authorised service centre by using this code.

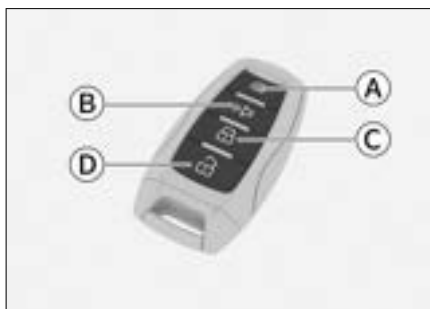
- › When purchasing or transferring the vehicle, hand over the key number tag to the purchaser.

⚠ CAUTION

The smart key contains electronic components, and you should follow the following instructions to prevent damage to the smart key:

- › Do not place the key in a hot place, such as on the instrument panel.
- › Do not disassemble it randomly.
- › Do not use the key to strike other objects or drop it on the ground.
- › Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in an ultrasonic cleaner.
- › Do not place the key with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as mobiles.

Key buttons introduction



2AF9A1972B89

- Ⓐ Start button
- Ⓑ Vehicle locating button
- Ⓒ Lock button
- Ⓓ Unlock button

Start button

All doors and the tailgate are closed and locked. Press the start button on the key once, and press the start button again within 1 second to start the vehicle remotely.

i NOTICE

After starting the vehicle remotely, the vehicle will automatically turn off if there is no operation within 15 minutes.

Locating function

When all doors are locked, press the vehicle locating button to activate the vehicle locating function so that you can find the vehicle quickly in the parking lot and other places.

Press it again during the vehicle locating warning to deactivate the vehicle locating function.

Lock button

Press the lock button to lock all doors. In this case, the hazard warning lights flash once.

i NOTICE

When locking the doors, check whether all doors are closed fully if the hazard warning lights do not flash.

Unlock button

Press the unlock button to unlock all doors. In this case, the hazard warning lights flash twice.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not modify the transmission frequency, enlarge transmission power (including additionally installing a radio frequency power amplifier), connect an external antenna, or use other transmitting antennas without permission.
- › When using the function, do not cause harmful interference to all kinds of legitimate radio communication services. Once interference is detected, stop using the function and take measures to eliminate the interference before further use.
- › Using the function may be subject to interference from various radio devices, resulting in a brief failure of function.

Key battery replacement

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle key contains a button battery.

- › The button battery in the vehicle key is dangerous. Regardless if it is a new battery or an old one, always keep it away from children.

Keys

- › If the button battery is swallowed or put into any part of the body, it may cause severe or fatal injury in 2 hours or less.
- › Seek medical attention if you suspect the battery is swallowed or placed in any part of the body.
- › Please dispose of used batteries according to local laws. Incorrect disposal of used batteries will damage the environment.

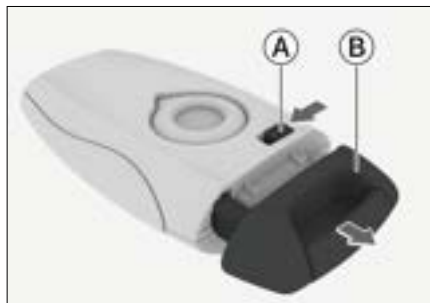
Battery warning label (only visible in some countries, e.g. Australia)



⚠ CAUTION

- › During operation, be sure to dry your hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- › The smart key contains electronic components, which must be protected from damage to the smart key due to impact, high temperature, exposure to the sun, liquid, moisture, corrosion, etc.
- › Do not touch or move any other parts.
- › The positive and negative terminals of the battery must be installed correctly.
- › Be careful not to lose parts when replacing the battery.

1. Push the release button on the smart key to take out the mechanical key.



C9F645464F00

Ⓐ Release button

Ⓑ Mechanical key

2. Use a flat-head screwdriver to gently pry open the key cover and take out the key.



2B67E1113B45

3. Check the position of the old battery and directions of its positive and negative terminals, then take out the old battery and replace it with a new battery. Make sure that the directions of its positive and negative terminals are installed correctly.



161DBEED0148

Battery model: CR2032.

4. Install the key cover and test whether all the key buttons are working properly.

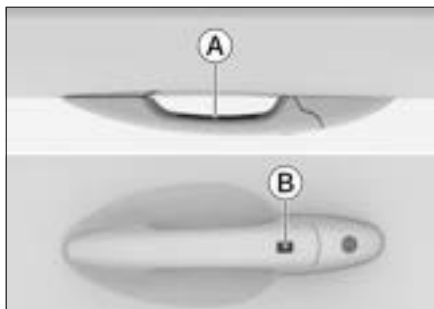
Door lock

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Locking and unlocking through the PEPS

When you carry a smart key with you, you can use the passive entry and passive start system (PEPS) to lock and unlock the door.



D0A40AA3A58F

(A) Unlock sensor

(B) Lock button

Unlocking

Touch the unlock sensor to unlock all doors. In this case, the hazard warning lights flash twice.

Locking

Press the lock button to lock all doors. In this case, the hazard warning lights flash once.

i NOTICE

When locking the doors, check whether all doors are closed fully if the hazard warning lights do not flash.

i NOTICE

- › Operate only the doors where the smart key is detected.
- › Do not lock and unlock the doors at the same time.
- › If you wear gloves to operate the door handle, you may not be able to unlock or lock the doors.
- › The PEPS radio waves may be weak. Surrounding radio equipment or barriers can affect communication between the smart key and the vehicle, causing the system to malfunction.
- › The PEPS system will deactivate for 3 seconds after each successful lock or unlock operation.
- › About outer door handle.

Door lock

After washing the vehicle in the cold season, please promptly wipe off any water stains on the gaps of the outer door handles. The accumulated water stains may freeze on the handle motion mechanism, causing sticking door handles. For example, after the door handle is pulled up, it may not be able to return to its original position, resulting in the door not being able to close properly. In this case, you can repeatedly pull the door handle several times to remove ice buildup.

Locking and unlocking with key buttons

Refer to the Key button introduction.
(▷ Page 26)

Locking and unlocking with central control buttons



Ⓐ Unlock button

Ⓑ Lock button

The central control buttons are located on the driver door. Press the central control buttons to lock or unlock all doors.

Unlocking with the interior handle



Left-hand drive models: when a vehicle door is locked, pull the interior handle on the driver side to open the door directly. Pull the interior handle on the passenger side to unlock the door, and pull it again to open the door.

Right-hand drive models: when a vehicle door is locked, pulling the interior handle will unlock it. Pull the handle again to open the door.

i NOTICE

If the child safety lock is activated when opening the rear doors with the inner handle, the rear doors cannot be opened.

1

Operation

Door lock

Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key



Insert the mechanical key into the door lock hole, and turn the key to lock or unlock the door.

i NOTICE

Using the mechanical key to unlock the door may trigger the vehicle anti-theft alarm. (▷ Page 268)

Emergency lock



The front passenger door and the rear doors are equipped with the door emergency locking devices.

When the vehicle is powered off or you cannot lock the door through the power door lock system, use the mechanical key to rotate the lock hole in the direction indicated by the arrow shown in the picture, and then close the door to lock the door.

For how to get the mechanical key, refer to Replacing the battery for key.

(▷ Page 27)

i NOTICE

If you need to use this method to lock the door, it means that the power door lock system has malfunctioned. In this case, go to the authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.

Child safety lock

If there are children in the vehicle, we recommend that they sit on comparatively safer rear seats. Child safety locks are available with the rear doors to prevent inadvertent opening of the doors.



Move the lever in the direction of the arrow to activate the child safety lock. Move the lever in the opposite direction to deactivate the child safety lock.

⚠ WARNING

Only the rear doors are equipped with child safety locks. If a child sits alone on a rear seat, activate the child locks on both rear doors at the same time to avoid accidents caused by accidental opening of the doors.

i NOTICE

After activating the child safety lock, you can only open the door by pulling the door handle from outside.

Automatic resetting

If all doors are locked and the power supply switch status, along with the doors, remains unchanged for a certain period after you press the key unlock button to unlock the doors successfully, all doors will be locked automatically.

Flameout unlocking

After the engine is turned off, all doors automatically unlock.

You can activate or deactivate the flameout unlocking function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** → **【Flameout unlocking】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Auto driving lock

All doors and tailgate will automatically lock when the vehicle speed exceeds the set value.

You can deactivate the auto driving lock function or set the speed to trigger the auto driving lock function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** → **【Speed locking】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

Before driving, make sure that all doors are completely closed.

Auto unlock upon collision

With power supply in ON mode, when system detects a collision, all doors will be unlocked automatically.

Truck

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Opening and closing the tailgate

Opening the tailgate



0812ADBE1D81

Mechanical tailgate lock: pull the tailgate handle directly to open the tailgate.

Electric tailgate lock: after unlocking the driver door, pull the tailgate handle to open the tailgate.

Closing the tailgate

Manually flip up the tailgate to close it.

⚠ CAUTION

- › If a canopy is provided, it needs to be opened before opening the tailgate to avoid damaging the canopy or other components.
- › When opening the tailgate, avoid applying external force to make it open quickly. Otherwise, the rope or the damping strut may be damaged.
- › When opening the tailgate, make sure hinges on both sides are fully stretched to keep the tailgate parallel with the truck bed bottom.
- › When the tailgate is frozen or covered with ice and snow, do not forcibly open the tailgate. Open the tailgate after the thawing.

If you must open the tailgate in an emergency, pour warm water on it to melt the ice. Once the frozen spots loosen, try to open it.

- › When closing the tailgate, be careful to ensure that items such as bags, dresses, ties and so on around you are not caught or pinched by the tailgate.
- › After closing the tailgate, please check whether it is completely closed.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not allow children to operate the tailgate. Otherwise, an accidental injury may be caused.

- › Do not close the tailgate forcibly. Otherwise, the tailgate and other components will be easily damaged.
- › When closing the tailgate, be careful not to hit or pinch other passengers' hands, feet and head etc. to prevent serious personal injury.

Tailgate footboard

The footboard makes it easier to get in and out of the trunk.

⚠ WARNING

- › Use the footboard only when the vehicle is parked on a level surface.
- › The footboard must be used in a well-lit area.
- › Make sure the footboard is clean before use.
- › Do not use the footboard barefoot.
- › The footboard load (total weight of person and goods) must be controlled below 150 kg.
- › Do not drive the vehicle when the footboard is unfolding.

Opening the footboard

1. Open the tailgate.

2. Press the button in the centre of the footboard fender, and the footboard will pop up slightly.



6F59D7791F13

3. Pull the footboard fully out and lower it to its lowest position.



31769DD13FAB

⚠ CAUTION

Do not tow anything with the footboard.

Retracting the footboard

Rotate the footboard upwards to the horizontal position and push it back into the tailgate until the footboard is fully seated.

Truck

Opening and closing the canopy (flat cover type)

Opening



When the driver's door is unlocked, press the micro switch of canopy, and then manually raise the canopy.

Closing

1. Close the tailgate and lock it.
2. Slowly pull down the canopy through the assist string to drop it completely.
3. Loosen the assist string and put it back in trunk.
4. Press both sides of the canopy from outside (as shown in the figure). A "click" you heard indicates that the canopy is locked.



5. Make sure that the canopy is closed completely.

Emergency unlocking outside the trunk

If the canopy cannot be opened through power door lock system, you can open it with the key for canopy in an emergency.

1. Open the cover plate, insert a key for the canopy into the keyhole and turn the key to unlock the canopy.



2. Raise the canopy manually.

Emergency unlocking inside the trunk

It is not allowed to carry people in trunk. However, in some unexpected cases, if one is locked in the trunk, self-rescue is practicable through the unlocking device inside.



9F427259192C

The canopy can be opened manually by turning the left and right unlocking device for canopy, as shown in the figure.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not drive the vehicle with the canopy open.
- › When opening or closing the canopy, make sure that it will not cause harm to other people near the canopy.
- › When closing the canopy, be careful not to get your bag or tie caught by the canopy.
- › Keep children from handling the canopy to prevent accidental injury.

- › When using assist strings, do not apply excessive force or allow your body such as the arm within the range the canopy moves. Otherwise, the arm may be pinched or other accidental injuries may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Avoid opening the tailgate when the canopy is closed to prevent damage to the canopy or other components.
- › Avoid using excessive force when opening the canopy to prevent potential damage.
- › Be careful when opening the canopy in strong wind. Under the action of strong wind, the canopy can be opened too much, leading to deformation of canopy.
- › Do not attach or affix any ornaments to the support poles of canopy.
- › Do not apply a lateral force to pull the canopy, as this may bend and deform the support poles.

i NOTICE

- › Do not attach heavy accessories on the canopy, as this could exceed the support poles' capacity and compromise the canopy's stability.
- › Do not disassemble the canopy by yourself.

Truck

About loading goods

- › The length and width of the loaded goods should not exceed the trunk.
To ensure the safety of the goods, please use tarpaulin or rope to secure the goods to prevent falling.

- › The loaded goods should not be too high.
Minimize the height of loaded goods to prevent transverse shaking when the vehicle is exposed to the impact of wind or turning inertia.

- › The tailgate should be avoided to load heavy object. If it is necessary, please pay attention to the following items; otherwise the door may be damaged.
When the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate is in a horizontally deployed state, and it is temporarily required to carry items, the load weight should be less than 150 kg.

It is forbidden to produce impact to the tailgate when loading the goods.

Do not put the cargo on the tailgate for a long time.

Before driving, make sure that the tailgate has been fully closed. Do not drive when the tailgate is opening.

The goods should be fixed firmly to avoid the impact of cargo bumping and movement on the tailgate.

- › Do not carry people and animals in a trunk equipped with canopy, otherwise death may occur due to lack of oxygen.
- › Do not throw sources of ignition (e.g. burning cigarette butts and matches, etc.) outside the car, otherwise they may be blown into the trunk by the wind, igniting the goods and causing a fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not support goods with the truck bed guard and tailgate.
- › Do not load the goods unevenly, otherwise it may cause the goods unstable and the vehicle partially overloaded, or even damage the trunk and the frame, etc.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not carry people in the trunk.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Window settings

You can make related window settings through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Close windows at vehicle speed

When the driving speed reaches the set value, the window will automatically raise.

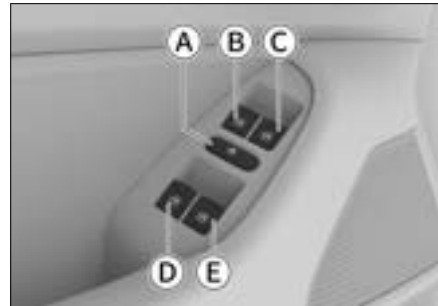
If you do not want to use this function, you can choose **【Off】**.

Close windows by locking

Once this function is activated, the windows will automatically raise when all doors are successfully locked with a smart key or the smart entry system.

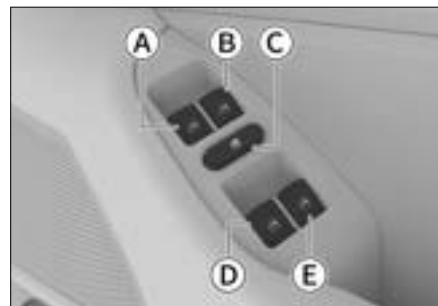
Driver window switch

Left-hand drive models



- Ⓐ Window lock switch
- Ⓑ Driver window switch
- Ⓒ Front passenger window switch
- Ⓓ Rear left window switch
- Ⓔ Rear right window switch

Right-hand drive models



- Ⓐ Front passenger window switch
- Ⓑ Driver window switch
- Ⓒ Window lock switch
- Ⓓ Rear left window switch
- Ⓔ Rear right window switch

Windows

Manual operation

To open or close the window, gently press or pull up and hold the corresponding switch until the window reaches the proper position.

One-push raising or lowering

Press the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically open completely. To stop it halfway, just pull up the switch.

Pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point, and then release the switch. At this time, the window will automatically close completely. To stop it halfway, just press the switch.

i NOTICE

- › For some models, only the driver's window is equipped with the one-push raising or lowering function.
- › If the one-push raising or lowering function fails, the window function may be disordered due to battery power failure, etc. At this time, the windows need to be initialised.

(▷ Page 41)

Emergency closing

In the case of an emergency, pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point and hold it. Then, the window will trigger the emergency closing function, and the window anti-pinch function will not work at this time.

Locking windows

When the window lock switch is pressed, the window switches on the rear door cannot be used to control the corresponding windows.

Pressing the window lock switch again will recover the function of the rear window switches.

i NOTICE

When there are children in the vehicle, it is recommended that they should sit in the relatively safe rear seats and the window lock function should be enabled.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the heads and hands of all passengers are away from the window before closing the window. Otherwise, an extremely serious injury will be caused.

⚠ CAUTION

In low-temperature environment, freezing may occur between the window glass and the window frame, resulting in the failure of the glass to move normally. In this case, do not force to operate it to avoid damage to the lift mechanism. After the interior temperature rises and the ice on the glass melts, the glass can be raised and lowered normally.

Passenger side window switches

On the handrail of the passenger side door, there is a window switch which can be used to open or close the corresponding window.

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection may be triggered to protect the glass lifter motor after repeated operation of the window switch. At this time, the window switch will temporarily fail. The window switch automatically returns to normal after the lifter motor cools down.

Delay function

Switch the power supply mode from ON mode to OFF mode, and windows can still be operated for a short time.

i NOTICE

Affected by the configuration, the delay function will be invalid after the front door of some models is opened.

Anti-pinch function

If a window is blocked by an obstacle during the closing process, the window will stop closing and automatically return a certain distance when the pressure reaches a certain value.

i NOTICE

- › For some models, only the driver's window is equipped with the anti-pinch function.
- › Under severe conditions, such as low temperature and severe bumping, the anti-pinch function may be triggered in the process of window glass raising, and the window cannot be raised smoothly. At this time, pull up the window switch until it exceeds the pressure point to raise the window.
- › When the one-push raising or lowering function is abnormal, the anti-pinch function will be disabled at the same time, and initialisation can be performed to restore it to normal.

! WARNING

- › Never test the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- › At the moment when the window is about to be completely raised, the anti-pinch function will not work if something gets stuck.
- › When the emergency raising function is triggered, the window anti-pinch function will not work.

Window initialisation

When errors occur in the window one-push raising or lowering function, you can reset it through the following operations:

Windows

1. Set the power supply to the ON mode.
2. Pull up the window switch beyond the pressure point until the window is completely closed and then hold for about 3 seconds.
3. Operate the window switch again so that the window goes through the one-push raising and one-push lowering to complete initialisation.

i NOTICE

When the window one-push raising or lowering function is disordered or every time the battery is disconnected and re-energized, all windows need to be initialised.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Opening and closing the sunroof



1259741DFF10

Tilt opening and closing

Manual opening/closing

- › Push and hold the sunroof button forwards, and the sunroof gradually tilts open.
- › Pull and hold the sunroof button backwards to close the sunroof.
- › To stop the sunroof halfway, release the button.

Automatic opening/closing

- › Push the sunroof button forwards and release it. The sunroof tilts open to the maximum angle and stops.
- › Pull the sunroof button backwards and release it to close the sunroof.
- › To stop the sunroof halfway, press the button again.

Sliding opening and closing

Manual opening/closing

- › Pull and hold the sunroof button backwards to slide open the sunroof.
- › Push and hold the sunroof button backwards to close the sunroof.
- › To stop the sunroof halfway, release the button.

Automatic opening/closing

- › Pull the sunroof button backwards and release it. The sunroof automatically opens to a comfortable position. Pull and release the sunroof button again. The sunroof automatically opens completely.
- › Push the sunroof button backwards and release it. The sunroof automatically closes.
- › To stop the sunroof halfway, press the button again.

Sunroof

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not extend your hands or head outside through the sunroof when driving. Accidental contact with exterior objects or emergency braking may cause severe injuries or even death.
- › When closing the sunroof, be careful not to pinch other passengers' hands, head and neck etc. to prevent serious personal injuries.
- › Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

i NOTICE

When the automatic opening/closing function of the sunroof fails, the function of the sunroof may be disordered due to battery power failure. At this time, the sunroof needs to be initialised.(▷ Page 45)

Opening and closing the sunroof visor

- › When you slide the sunroof open, the sunroof visor will open automatically according to the opening angle of the sunroof.
- › When only opening the sunroof visor with the sunroof closed, pull back the sunroof visor manually.
- › When closing the sunroof visor, pull the sunroof visor forwards manually.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not allow children operate the sunroof visor.
- › When opening the sunroof visor with the sunroof, be careful not to pinch other people's hands, head, neck, etc. to avoid serious personal injury.
- › Do not close the sunroof visor before the sunroof is opened or not completely closed, so as to prevent the sunroof visor from falling off and causing serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not squeeze and drag the sunroof visor with force, so as to prevent the sunroof visor from falling off or being damaged.

When parking a vehicle for a long time, close the sunroof visor to prevent the interior trim from being damaged due to the interior high temperature if it is exposed to the sun for a long time.

Anti-pinch function

If the sunroof encounters an obstruction during the automatic closing, it will stop closing and return a certain distance.

⚠ WARNING

- › Despite the anti-pinch function, there is still a risk of pinching.

In special cases (e.g. if the obstruction is thin), the closing process cannot be interrupted. Therefore, despite the anti-pinch function, it is important to ensure that the closing area of the sunroof remains unobstructed.

- › Do not attempt to use any part of your body to test the anti-pinch function.
- › At the moment when the sunroof is completely closed, the anti-pinch function will not work if any object is stuck.
- › When closing the sunroof manually, the anti-pinch function will not work. Be careful not to pinch fingers or other body parts.

2. Push the sunroof button forwards and hold it for about 8 seconds, and then release the button after the sunroof moves once.
3. Push and hold the sunroof button again within about 5 seconds. The sunroof closes first, and then perform an operation of closing and opening. When the sunroof completely closed, release the button to complete the initialisation.

1

Operation

Thermal protection function

Thermal protection function may be triggered to protect the sunroof motor after repeated operation of the sunroof switch. At this time, the sun roof function will be temporarily disabled, and the sunroof will fail to be operated. The sunroof switch will automatically return to normal after the motor cools down.

Sunroof initialisation

When errors occur in the system, you can reset it through the following operations:

1. Tilt the sunroof to extreme position with the power supply mode ON.

Bonnet

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Opening the bonnet

1. By pulling the handle located under the driver instrument panel, the bonnet will pop open by a gap.



7638BA847BEE

2. With your hand in the gap, push the lock in the direction of the arrow and lift the bonnet, which will automatically rise to open.



677FD4158699

i NOTICE

The appearance of some models is different from this figure, but you can still refer to this content.

Closing the bonnet

Pull the bonnet downwards and close it by pressing it downwards with the appropriate force at a height of 20 to 30 cm from the lock.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the bonnet is fully closed and securely locked prior to driving. Otherwise, it may open unexpectedly during the driving, leading to an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Before closing the bonnet, make sure that there is no debris left inside the engine compartment.

Bonnet

- › Do not use excessive force when closing the bonnet. Failure to do so may deform the bonnet.
- › If the bonnet is not locked properly, reopen it and then apply greater force to close it again, ensuring it is fully locked. Do not press the bonnet to lock it while it is in a partially locked state, as this may cause deformation of the bonnet.

1

Operation

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Refuelling method

1. Open the fuel tank door by pulling the fuel tank door opening handle in the arrow direction shown in the figure.



B444C1DF0A23

2. Rotate the fuel tank cap counter-clockwise and open it.



F4E24D286072

⚠ WARNING

› When loosening the fuel tank cap, do not continue if you hear a whooshing sound. Once the sound disappears, you can open it slowly.

In hot weather, high-pressure fuel may be sprayed from the fuel tank filler due to large internal pressure, resulting in a personal injury.

› Take care of such matters during refuelling:

The engine must be shut down.

No smoking or naked flames are allowed in the vicinity of the vehicle.

Never answer or make calls.

Adhere to all precautions posted at the petrol station.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not add too much fuel. Just add it until the first automatic stop of the fuel nozzle. Otherwise, the fuel can easily enter into the carbon canister, shortening its service life.
- › Do not allow fuel to splash on the vehicle while refuelling. Otherwise, the painted surfaces may be corroded.
- › Add only the designated fuel.

3. After refuelling, put the fuel tank cap back to its original position and rotate it clockwise until you hear a "click" sound, indicating that the fuel tank cap is installed in place.

i NOTICE

The fuel tank cap must be installed in place. Otherwise, it may cause fuel leakage.

4. Close the fuel tank door.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Please close the fuel door in time after adding fuel or AdBlue completely. If the fuel door is not closed for a long time, dust, silt and other foreign matters may accumulate, causing the fuel door not to be closed, or not to be opened again after being closed. It is necessary to clean the pushrod of the fuel door, the pushrod locking hole and its surrounding area in time.

- › Ensure the fuel door is fully closed before locking the doors, as failing to do so may cause the fuel door to become stuck or unable to open. If such a case occurs, contact the authorised service centre promptly for handling.
- › Never operate the fuel tank door violently, so as to prevent the locking mechanism from deformation and break which may result in the failure to open or close the fuel tank door.

i NOTICE

Do not clean the vehicle when the fuel tank door is opened.

Fuel information

Gasoline vehicle models

| Item | Data |
|--|---|
| Fuel specifications | 91 and above unleaded gasoline (for Saudi Arabia, UAE, Qatar, Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman and Iraq) |
| | Unleaded gasoline rated 87 or above (for Mexico) |
| | 92 and above unleaded gasoline (for other regions) |
| Fuel tank capacity [L] (reference value) | 80 ± 3 |

Refuelling

Diesel vehicle models

| Item | Data |
|--|---|
| Fuel specifications | No. 0 diesel fuel (used in the environment with the lowest temperature above 4°C) |
| | No. -10 diesel fuel (used in the environment with the lowest temperature above -5°C) |
| | No. -20 diesel fuel (used in the environment with the lowest temperature above -14°C) |
| | No. -35 diesel fuel (used in the environment with the lowest temperature above -29°C) |
| | No. -50 diesel fuel (used in the environment with the lowest temperature above -44°C) |
| Fuel tank capacity [L] (reference value) | 78 ± 3 |

⚠ CAUTION

- It is not allowed to fill gasoline vehicles with diesel or fill diesel vehicles with gasoline. Otherwise, engine failure may occur.

- Diesel fuel must meet the GB19147 standard or the relevant standards of the local market.
Never use diesel that does not meet the required standards, as it may lead to engine performance degradation, abnormal wear, and other failures.
- To prevent the diesel from wax precipitation which will affect normal work of the engine, select proper diesel according to temperature change.

AdBlue filling

1

Operation

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Refuelling method

1. Open the fuel tank door by pulling the fuel tank door opening handle in the arrow direction shown in the figure.



B444C1DF0A23

2. Turn the AdBlue cover counterclockwise and open it.



946D4CF10C9B

3. When the filling is completed, put the AdBlue cover back and rotate it clockwise until a "click" sound is heard, indicating that the AdBlue cover is installed in place.
4. Close the fuel tank door.

i NOTICE

- › Filling AdBlue solution can reduce emission. Please fill AdBlue solution that meets the standard according to the requirements of local laws and regulations before using vehicle.
- › If AdBlue solution is depleted completely, the vehicle will cannot be started.
- › When a warning message about the level of AdBlue system appears on the instrument panel, the warning message will not be cleared until the level of AdBlue solution is raised to sufficient.

AdBlue filling

- › When a warning message about off-specification AdBlue or AdBlue system failure appears on the instrument panel, replace the acceptable AdBlue solution in time or go to the authorised service centre for repair.

CAUTION

- › Do not inject AdBlue into the fuel filler to avoid damage to the engine.
- › To prevent entry of impurities when filling AdBlue solution, a special tube is required. Any impurities brought into the tank may cause blockage. To prevent entry of impurities, always use pure water when cleaning AdBlue-related accessories. Tap water is not allowed. AdBlue is alkaline, which has great corrosive effect on copper, bronze, lead, zinc, aluminium, aluminium alloys, magnesium, magnesium alloys, solders (including lead) and tin, etc.
- › AdBlue that is rejected or heavily contaminated should be recycled to the manufacturer for centralized processing. It is not allowed to be discharged directly, causing pollution to the environment.
- › Once a fire occurs, use a large amount of water for cooling to prevent the internal pressure of AdBlue tank from rising sharply at high temperature and causing an explosion.

- › If AdBlue solution spilled accidentally into your eyes, rinse them with plenty of clean water for at least 15 minutes and keep your eyes opening in rinsing process.
- › If AdBlue solution spilled accidentally onto your skin, rinse it with mild soap solution or plenty of clean water.
- › If you inhaled it accidentally, you will feel a sting or uncomfortable in respiratory tract, move to a place with fresh air as soon as possible. If symptoms persist, seek medical attention immediately.
- › As for storage, the storage period is 36 months when the storage temperature is $\leq 10^{\circ}\text{C}$; the storage period is 18 months when the storage temperature is $\leq 25^{\circ}\text{C}$; the storage period is 12 months when the storage temperature is $\leq 30^{\circ}\text{C}$.


AdBlue information

| Item | Data |
|---|---|
| AdBlue specifications | AUS 32 |
| AdBlue tank capacity [L] (effective capacity, reference value) | 16.7 (GW4D20M model) 15 (GW4D24 model) |

Vehicle equipment



Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Front seat heating/ventilation

1. When the power supply is in ON mode, pressing the seat button  will call up the A/C setting interface.



ECDFE33C2A53

2. In the A/C setting interface, touch the left seat button  or right seat button  to adjust the heating or ventilation position of the corresponding seat.



D924681D97A6

NOTICE

The heating and ventilation functions of one seat cannot be activated at the same time.

WARNING

When the seat heating function is activated, the following passengers must take care:

- › Infants, children, the elderly, the ill or the physically disadvantaged;
- › A person who is with sensitive skin;
- › A person who is overworked;
- › A person who is drowsy because of drinking or taking medicine.

CAUTION

- › Never modify the seat and its electrical system. Otherwise, the function and life of the seat heater may be affected.

Seats

- › To prevent seat overheating, do not place any mats, cushions or other insulating materials on the seat when the seat heating function is activated.
- › To prevent draining the battery voltage, never use the seat heating function for a long time without starting the vehicle.
- › The seat heater may be damaged when the following conditions occur, and it must be checked before use:
There is a lot of water on the seat.
The seat is pierced by sharp objects (pins or knives).
The seat smells peculiar.

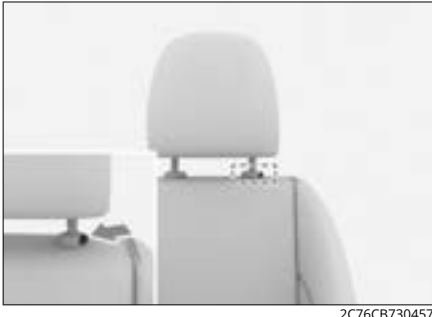
Headrests

Adjusting the headrest

⚠ WARNING
Do not adjust the headrest during driving.

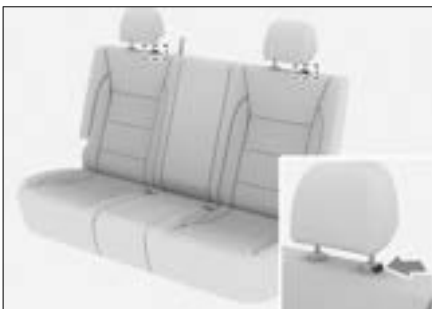
When the headrest centre height is aligned with the top of your ears, the headrest will give full play to its protection function.

Front headrest adjustment



2C76CB730457

Rear headrest adjustment



E7017835B926

- › To raise a headrest, directly lift the headrest to the required position.
- › To lower a headrest, push the headrest down to the required position while pressing and holding the headrest adjustment button.

i NOTICE

- › The lowest position of the headrest is not its using position. The headrest must be ascended to the locked position before use.
- › After adjusting the headrest, press the headrest to confirm it is locked firmly.

Removing the headrest

To remove the headrest, press and hold the headrest adjust button, and lift the headrest until it is totally removed.
If necessary, please adjust the seat backrest to remove the headrest.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive without the headrest. Otherwise, if there is a collision, your neck will be greatly impacted, resulting in serious injuries and even death.

Manual seat adjustment

⚠ WARNING

- › Never adjust the seat during driving.
- › Make sure that the driver's seat is adjusted to the correct position before driving. Otherwise, this may easily cause incorrect operations, accidents or ineffective use of the safety efficiency of seat belts, airbags, headrest and other devices.
- › Do not tilt the seat backrest excessively to prevent the passenger from sliding out from the lap belt when a collision happens. The seat belt will provide the best protection only when you sit up straight and lean against the seat backrest.

Adjustment of front and rear positions



C8DA0A8C2913

Pull up the seat position adjustment lever, slide the seat back and forth to the required position, and release the adjustment lever.

i NOTICE

After adjusting the seat, make sure that it is locked firmly.

Backrest tilt adjustment



74013DAE1845

Move your body tightly against the backrest, pull up the tilt adjustment handle of the seat backrest, lean back to adjust the backrest to the required angle, and release the adjustment handle.

Seats

1

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

Please raise the backrest tilt adjustment handle completely before adjusting the backrest. Otherwise, the seat may be subject to mechanical failures.

Seat height adjustment



528E97CFB6BA

- › To ascend the seat, repeatedly pull up the seat height adjustment handle.
- › To descend the seat, repeatedly press down the seat height adjustment handle.

i NOTICE

Some functions are only available for the driver's seat.

Electric seat adjustment

⚠ WARNING

- › Never adjust the seat during driving.

- › Make sure that the driver's seat is adjusted to the correct position before driving. Otherwise, this may easily cause incorrect operations, accidents or ineffective use of the safety efficiency of seat belts, airbags, headrest and other devices.

- › Do not tilt the seat backrest excessively to prevent the passenger from sliding out from the lap belt when a collision happens. The seat belt will provide the best protection only when you sit up straight and lean against the seat backrest.

i NOTICE

Some functions are only available for the driver's seat.

Seat backrest adjustment



B85E8996CEEC

Move the top of the button forwards and backwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Do not excessively tilt the seat backrest to avoid your body slipping out of the lap belt in a collision. The seat belt will provide the best protection only when you sit up straight and lean against the seat backrest.

Seat forward/backward adjustment



Move the button forwards and backwards to adjust the front and rear positions of the seat.

Seat height adjustment



Move the rear of the button upwards and downwards to raise or lower the seat.

Front armrest



Slide the storage case cover forward to an appropriate position to provide elbow support for the front passenger, enhancing arm comfort. Sliding the cover backward returns it to its original position.

Rear seat adjustment (integral type)

Seat cushion folding



Pull the cord hook at the middle cushion and turn upwards the cushion to fold the cushion and fix the cushion position with cord hook.

Folding the seat cushion creates a larger storage space.

Seats

⚠ CAUTION

Remove all materials from the seat before folding the seat cushion.

⚠ WARNING

Never fold the seat when driving the vehicle.

Seat cushion restoration



Release the rope hook, lay the cushion down slowly, and ensure the belt buckle can enter into the cushion slot smoothly. Then, press the middle cushion until the cushion position is locked.

Backrest folding



1. Adjust the seat headrest to its lowest position.

2. Adjust the seat belt to avoid interfering with folding of the backrest.
If the locking tab and the buckle of the rear middle seat belt are connected, unlock and separate them.
3. The unlocked backrest can be folded forwards by pulling up the unlocking rope of the backrest.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Remove all objects from the seat before folding the seat backrest.
- › Do not place heavy objects on the folded backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Never fold the seat when driving the vehicle.

Backrest restoring

1. Adjust the seat belt to avoid it being stuck under the seat during backrest recovery.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not clamp the rear middle seat belt under the seat back; otherwise, it may cause abnormal noise or excessive wear of the seat belt.

2. Pull up the backrest and return it to the original position for use. Shake the seat backrest slightly back and forth to confirm that it is locked in place.

i NOTICE

When folding and recovering a backrest, please make sure that the seat cushion is in the use position (the seat cushion keeps flat); otherwise, it may affect the locking of the backrest.

Rear seat adjustment (split type)

Seat cushion folding

The rear seat cushion can be folded separately, and the seat cushion can be turned up directly. When the seat cushion is turned to the maximum position, the seat cushion can be locked.

Folding the seat cushion creates a larger storage space.

i NOTICE

Remove all materials from the seat before folding the seat cushion.

⚠ WARNING

Never fold the seat when driving the vehicle.

Seat cushion restoration



B0BBA7657CEC

Pull the drawstring of the seat cushion on both sides to put down the seat cushion on both sides respectively. During the seat cushion reset process, please ensure that the seat belt buckle smoothly enters the seat cushion slot.

Backrest folding



9F10FAEAE1CE

1. Adjust the seat headrest to its lowest position.
2. Adjust the seat belt to avoid interfering with folding of the backrest.
If the locking tab and the buckle of the rear middle seat belt are connected, unlock and separate them.

Seats

3. Pull up the drawstrings on both sides of the backrest to unlock the backrest respectively on both sides, and then fold the backrest forwards.

i NOTICE

- › Remove all objects from the seat before folding the seat backrest.
- › Do not place heavy objects on the folded backrest.

! WARNING

Never fold the seat when driving the vehicle.

Backrest restoring

1. Adjust the seat belt to avoid it being stuck under the seat during backrest recovery.

! CAUTION

Do not clamp the rear middle seat belt under the seat back; otherwise, it may cause abnormal noise or excessive wear of the seat belt.

2. Pull up the backrest and return it to the original position for use. Shake the seat backrest slightly back and forth to confirm that it is locked in place.

i NOTICE

When folding and recovering a backrest, please make sure that the seat cushion is in the use position (the seat cushion keeps flat); otherwise, it may affect the locking of the backrest.

Rearview mirrors

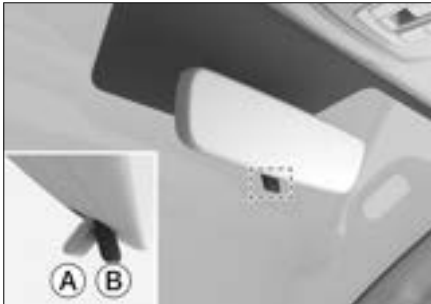
1

Operation

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Manual anti-glare interior rearview mirror



56FE72044E30

- Ⓐ Normal position
- Ⓑ Anti-glare position

Toggle the handle to the rear of the vehicle to access the anti-glare position. The reflection from the headlights of the vehicle behind can be reduced at that position.

Automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror



ED5E4F7C1106

- Ⓐ Indicator light
- Ⓑ Switch

Switch the power supply to ON mode, and then the automatic anti-glare function is defaulted to be in ON status. Press the switch to activate or deactivate the automatic anti-glare function. If the indicator light turns on, it indicates that the automatic anti-glare function is activated and the interior rearview mirror will automatically reduce the reflection according to the light intensity of the headlight of the vehicle behind.

Adjusting the side mirrors

Mirror adjustment



C7113A00E9A2

Rearview mirrors

Ⓐ Select button

Ⓑ Adjustment button

1. Press the left (L) or right (R) side of the select button to choose the left or right side mirror.
2. Press the up, down, left or right position of the adjustment button to adjust the mirror surface of the selected side mirror.
3. After the adjustment, reset the select button to the initial position.

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. Otherwise, errors in control can lead to accidents and serious injuries or death.

Electric folding



Press this button to fold the side mirrors, press again to deploy them.

Manual folding



Move the side mirror in the direction indicated by the arrow and it can be folded.

The side mirrors must be reset to the use position before driving.

⚠ CAUTION

For electric folding side mirrors, do not fold them manually. Otherwise, the internal structure of the side mirrors may be damaged.

Auto folding when locking the vehicle

You can set the side mirror folding to **【Auto】** or **【Manual】** through **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** → **【Fold exterior rear view mirror】** on the multimedia display screen.

When **【Auto】** is set, the folding and unfolding of side mirrors is linked to the locking and unlocking of the doors.

Rearview mirrors

WARNING

- › Before driving, you must unfold the side mirrors and adjust them appropriately.
- › Be careful of your fingers and items when moving the side mirrors to avoid injury or damage to the side mirror.

1

Operation

Steering wheel

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Steering wheel adjustment

Type I



F4A126D753F2

Type II



2C92C1A30B7F

1. Release the adjustment lever beneath the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to align it with your chest and make sure you can see all instruments and indicator lights on the instrument panel.
3. After adjusting, retract the adjustment lever in place to lock the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

- › Never adjust the steering wheel during vehicle running. Otherwise, serious injuries or death may result from an accident caused by control errors.
- › You must confirm that the steering wheel is locked firmly in place after adjusting it. Otherwise, serious injuries or death may result from an accident caused by sudden movement of the steering wheel.

Steering wheel heating



05BB90CA0799

The steering wheel heating function improves driving comfort in low-temperature environments.

Steering wheel

1

Operation

When the power supply is in ON mode or the engine has been started. Press the heating button to activate or deactivate the steering wheel heating function.

i NOTICE

To prevent draining the battery voltage and affecting engine startup, refrain from using the steering wheel heating function for a long time when the engine is not running.

Steering wheel not aligned

When the power supply is in ON mode, you can activate or deactivate the steering wheel not aligned function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** → **【The steering wheel is not aligned】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After the steering wheel not aligned function is activated, the instrument panel reminds you to align the steering wheel when the following conditions are met:

- › The engine is running.
- › The vehicle is stationary and has been engaged in the P gear position.
- › The left and right turn signal light switches are off.
- › The steering wheel angle exceeds the specified value.

Horn

Press the horn mark on the steering wheel or its surrounding area and the horn honks.

⚠ CAUTION

- › There is a front airbag inside the steering wheel. Do not hit the position around the horn hard to avoid the condition that the airbag cannot work normally during accident or the airbag is accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries or even death to passengers.
- › Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.

Roof rack

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Roof rack

To install a luggage rack on the roof rack, please read carefully the installation manual that comes with the luggage rack.

i NOTICE

When the luggage rack is installed or used for carrying items, relevant requirements of local traffic regulations should be observed.

Roof rack bearing capacity

The maximum load weight of the roof rack is 50 kg; the maximum load weight of the roof rack is 35 kg when the vehicle is decelerating rapidly.

i NOTICE

The load weight of the roof rack includes accessories such as the beam and other accessories.

⚠ WARNING

- › Items on the roof luggage rack must be secured firmly in place. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.
- › Loading goods on the roof luggage rack will raise the vehicle centre of gravity. Avoid high speed driving, sudden startup, sharp turns, emergency braking or abrupt operation. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle due to incorrect operation of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.
- › When rather heavy or large objects are loaded on the roof luggage rack, changes in the vehicle centre of mass and wind resistance may affect its driving performance, and there is a risk of an accident. Therefore, you must adjust your driving style and speed according to the specific circumstances.
- › Drive at a low speed in lateral wind. The vehicle profile and its high centre of gravity make it more sensitive to lateral gust, and reducing the vehicle speed will make it easier to control.
- › Do not overspeed, jolt, make sharp turns, hit objects, etc. when driving off-road or in uneven terrain. This can cause loss of control or overturn of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death, as well as serious damage to the suspension and chassis of the vehicle.

Roof rack

- › Do not cross steep slopes, and it is better to drive straight up or down. The vehicle is more likely to roll over than to roll forward or backward.
- › The roof luggage rack can only be used with the sunroof closed. Otherwise, the roof luggage rack or the items loaded on it may cause injury to passengers.

1

Operation

Light control

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Light settings

You can make related light settings through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Light】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Active welcome light

When the power supply is in OFF mode, the main light knob is in **【AUTO】** mode, and the ambient brightness reaches the condition to turn on the low beam headlights, all doors will be successfully unlocked outside the vehicle (except for unlocking the door with the mechanical key). The exterior lights will turn on for a period of time so that you can approach the vehicle in dark conditions.

Power saving delay time

You can set the delaying of the effective time for power saving function. Switch the power supply mode to OFF mode, if the state of the power mode and the door lock does not change within the set time, the relevant lights will turn on automatically to save power.

Ceiling light delay time

When the door control function activates the interior lights, the delay for turning them off can be set after the doors are closed.

Follow me home

You can set the delay time of follow me home function (with the function activated). You can also deactivate the follow me home function.

After the function is activated, the power supply is in OFF mode, and the main light knob is in the AUTO position. The current light intensity reaches the condition to turn on low beam headlights. When the driver's door is opened, the position lights and low beam headlights will be on for a period of time to ensure that you can leave the vehicle in a dark environment.

Vehicle search function mode

You can set the vehicle prompt status when activating the vehicle search function.

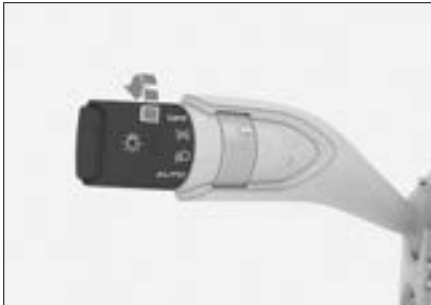
Light control combination switch

Main light switch

i NOTICE

Do not use the exterior lights for a long time when the vehicle is not started. Otherwise, the battery may lose power, affecting the normal start of the vehicle.

Left-hand drive models



08A6266DA914

Right-hand drive models




704AB77693D3

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the position lights as a substitute for low beam headlights while driving. Otherwise, there is a risk of an accident.

The position lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road in front of your vehicle. Therefore, turn on the low beam headlights in the dark or poor visibility.

- › Turn the main light switch to the low beam headlight  position to turn on the low beam headlights and keep the position lights and the license plate lights on.
- › Turn main light switch to the **【AUTO】** position. The clearance lights and low beam headlights will turn on or off automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding environment.

⚠ CAUTION

- › During the day, if heavy fog reduces visibility, the lights may not automatically turn on. Turn on the lights manually in this case.
- › Auto light control can only assist the driver. At all times, the driver should be responsible for the lighting of the vehicle.
- › Turn the main light switch to the **【OFF】** position to turn off all vehicle lights.

Light control

Fog light knob

Left-hand drive models



7D9D24C9C875

Right-hand drive models

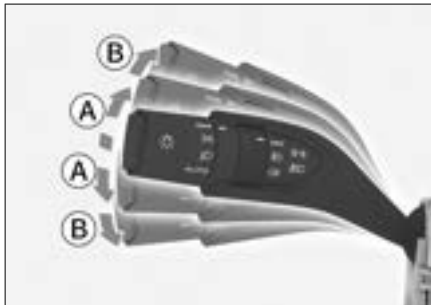


898A848A957C

- › When the clearance lights (position lights, license plate lights) turn on, turn the fog light knob to the front fog light (F) position to turn on the front fog lights.
- › When the low beam headlights or the front fog lights turn on, turn the fog light knob to the rear fog light (R) position repeatedly to turn on or off the rear fog lights. Once released, the knob will automatically return.

Steering and lane change signals

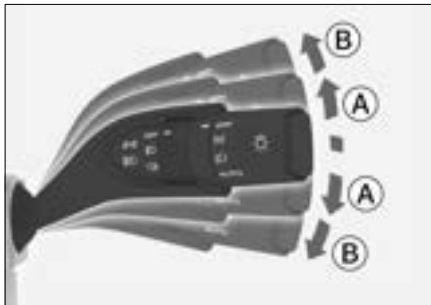
Left-hand drive models



802B885FD258

- (A) Lane change signal
- (B) Steering signal
- › Lane change signal: slightly move the light control combination switch upwards or downwards and release it. Then, the combination switch will automatically return to its original position, and the corresponding turn signal lights will flash 3 times.
- › Steering signal: move up or down the light control combination switch and release it, and the combination switch will automatically return to its original position and the corresponding turn signal lights will flash continuously.

Right-hand drive models



8E957A5349DE

Light control

1

Operation

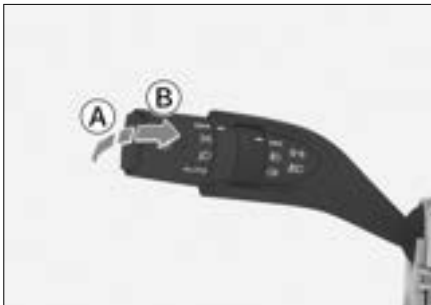
Ⓐ Lane change signal

Ⓑ Steering signal

- › Lane change signal: slightly move the light control combination switch upwards or downwards and release it. Then, the combination switch will automatically return to its original position, and the corresponding turn signal lights will flash 3 times.
- › Steering signal: move the light control combination switch upwards or downwards and then release it. The combination switch will return automatically to its original position, and the corresponding turn signal lights will flash continuously. When the turn is finished, the turn signal lights will turn off.

Manual high/low beam headlight switch

Left-hand drive models

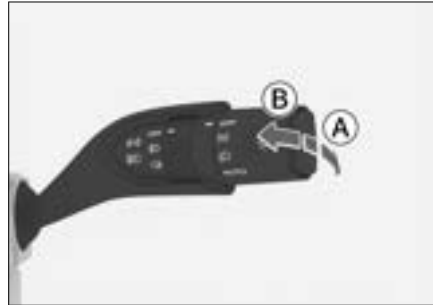


E7A6C01E1750

Ⓐ High beam headlights on

Ⓑ High beam headlights flashing

Right-hand drive models



E53B36026676

Ⓐ High beam headlights on

Ⓑ High beam headlights flashing

- › When the low beam headlights are on, press the light control combination switch away from the steering wheel to turn on or off the high beam headlights. The switch will automatically return to its original position when you release it.
- › Pull the light control combination switch towards yourself, and the high beam headlights will turn on. After releasing, the combination switch automatically returns to its original position and the high beam headlights turn off. Repeat this operation to make high beam headlights flash.

Light control

Auto high/low beam headlight switch

Left-hand drive models





6F16257A42DD

Right-hand drive models



20AE8C518075

The auto high/low beam headlight switch function allows the vehicle headlights to automatically switch between high and low beams based on the current speed and ambient light conditions. When the low beam headlights are on and the high beam headlights are off, press the auto high beam switch  to activate or deactivate the auto low-high beam function. After the function is activated, the auto high beam work indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turns on.

WARNING

The automatic high and low beam function is only an auxiliary function. The driver should manually switch between high and low beam headlights according to the light and visibility conditions if necessary in traffic or weather conditions. Manual intervention is required in the following cases:

- › Weather conditions are not conducive to driving, such as heavy fog or rain or snow.
- › Turn sharply or drive on the slope.
- › Drive at a junction or the opposite traffic cannot be saw completely, such as when the light of the opposite traffic is obscured by a collision barrier or when you are travelling on motorway.
- › Drive in areas with poor lighting conditions and many buildings.
- › There are traffic participants with poor lighting around the road, such as pedestrians or non-motorized vehicles.
- › There are highly reflective objects near the road, such as traffic signs.
- › The rain light sensor on the current windscreen is dirty, frosted or covered by labels.

Daytime running light

To allow other drivers to see your vehicle more clearly, the daytime running lights automatically turn on when the vehicle is started.

The daytime running lights will go out in the following conditions:

- › The headlights are on.
- › The turn signal light is on.
- › Shift to P gear position (automatic transmission models).

⚠ WARNING

- › The daytime running lights are not designed for the needs of night-time driving.
- › The driver is always obliged to ensure that the vehicle is driving with the correct lights in compliance with traffic laws.

Front fog lights auxiliary lighting

This feature enables the corresponding front fog light on one side of the vehicle to automatically illuminate during turning, and all front fog lights to automatically illuminate during reversing, in order to better illuminate the surrounding environment.

The following conditions must be met in order to activate the front fog lights auxiliary lighting:

- › The vehicle is travelling at a speed below 35 km/h (22 mph).

- › The low beam headlights are turned on.
- › The turn signal lights are turned on or the angle of steering wheel is greater than 60°.
- › The front fog lights are not turned on.

Emergency brake flasher

You can activate or deactivate this function through the 【Vehicle setting】 →

【In-Car】 → 【Driving control】 →

【Emergency brake flasher】 interface on the multimedia display screen. After the function is activated, when the vehicle is driving at a speed of more than 50 km/h (31 mph), the hazard warning lights will quick flash to warn the vehicle behind to prevent rear-end collision if you brake the vehicle urgently at that time.

Hazard warning lights



7C31124F30AD

In case of vehicle breakdown or traffic incidents, turn on the hazard warning lights to remind other vehicles. Press the switch to turn on or off the hazard warning lights.

Light control

Light height adjustment



D44B3332F879

The headlight beam height is adjusted according to the number of passengers and the load of the vehicle.

- › Turn the knob upwards to raise the height of the headlight beam.
- › Turn the knob downwards to lower the height of the headlight beam.

Interior lights




⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the interior lights for a long time when the vehicle is not started. Otherwise, the drained battery may be caused.

Reading lights



BAE8A81B410B

- › Press the left reading light switch  or the right reading light switch  to turn on or off the corresponding reading light.
- › Press the main reading light switch  to turn on or off the reading lights.

Door control button



7DA4AB569972

Press the door control button to enable or disable the door control function.

With the door control function enabled, the reading lights will turn on or off automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the door state.

Rear ceiling light



3343A648A4F8

Light control

The toggle switch controls the ceiling light and the door control function on/off. With the door control function enabled, the ceiling light will automatically turn on or off according to the brightness of the surrounding environment and the door state.

- › OFF position: the ceiling light is off.
- › Middle position: the door control function is activated.
- › ON position: the ceiling light is on.

1

Operation

Wiper control

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Front wiper washing setting

You can set the interval from the activation of the washing function to the activation of the front wiper through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** → **【Front wiper interval】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Auto wipers

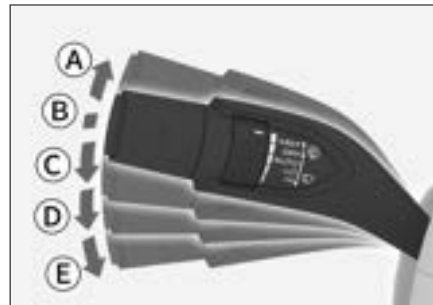
Wiper positions

Left-hand drive models



89D5E093F1DB

Right-hand drive models



B45070D45E01

Ⓐ Wiper mist operation (MIST)

Move the wiper control combination switch upwards to the **【MIST】** position. Once it is released, it will return to its original position. The wiper will operate once.

Ⓑ Wiper off (OFF)

Ⓒ Automatic (AUTO)

Ⓓ Low speed (LO)

Ⓔ High speed (HI)

i NOTICE

When the wiper is in **【AUTO】** gear and in operation, the wiper will automatically stop wiping if the driver's door is opened. This function helps prevent rain from being splashed by the operation of the wipers.

Wiper control

1

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the surface of the windscreen is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object. Otherwise, the windscreen or the wiper blade and the internal structure of the wiper may be damaged.
- › Before using the wipers in the cold season, be sure to check whether the wiper blades are frozen on the windscreen. If the wiper blades have been frozen on the windscreen, use them after unfreezing. Otherwise, the wiper blades and wiper motor may be damaged.
- › When the wipers stop running due to snow and other reasons, please turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible, and then remove snow and other debris so that the wipers can work normally.

Adjustment of auto brush frequency

Left-hand drive models



9513280E7CB0

Right-hand drive models



2701CC67FE8C

Turn the adjustment knob to change the sensitivity of the rain and light sensor to rain to adjust the wipe frequency of the wiper at the auto wipe position.

⚠ WARNING

- › The rain and light sensor can not fully recognize each fall of rain and activate the wipers. If rain on the windscreen affects the line of sight, you should manually adjust the wiper position or wipe frequency duly as required.
- › When the auto wiper is in the **【AUTO】** position, the wiper may operate unexpectedly if the windscreen near the interior rearview mirror is touched from outside or the windscreen is vibrated. Be careful not to let the wiper pinch your fingers or other parts.
- › Do not place the auto wiper in the **【AUTO】** position when you wash the vehicle or no wiper is required to be used. Otherwise, the wiper may operate unexpectedly.

Wiper control

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the surface of the windscreen near the interior rearview mirror is dirty or has any foreign object (snow, gum, etc.), clean it first and remove the foreign object; otherwise it may affect the normal work of the auto wipers.
- › Even if snowflakes come into contact with the rain and light sensor, the sensor may not operate normally and the wipers may not function, as snowflakes come in different shapes. The melted snow may cause the wiper to conduct automatic wipe.

Washing function

Left-hand drive models



5107E4324CFE

Right-hand drive models



0A6E97CAD7F2

Pull up the wiper control combination switch towards your direction and hold it, and the front wipers will use the windscreen washer fluid to wipe the front windscreen. When it is released, the combination switch will return automatically to its original position.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Avoid using the washer continuously for a long time. Otherwise, the washing motor may be damaged. To protect the washing motor, the washer may automatically shut down after a period of continuous operation.
- › When the washer fluid is insufficient, replenish it. In the cold season, add appropriate washer fluid to ensure that it will not freeze. Otherwise, not only the washing function will not be available, but also the related parts will be frozen.

Wiper control

1

Operation

- › Do not use products that can produce coatings on the windscreen (cleaning solutions for crystal plating or coating, glass coatings, etc.). Otherwise, abnormal vibration and noise may occur during the wipe by the wipers.
- › The blades should not come into contact with oily cleaning agents, as they may react chemically and cause deformation.

Wiper nozzle heating

You can activate or deactivate the front nozzle heating function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** →

【Body】 → **【Front nozzle heating】** interface on the multimedia display screen. The heating function will automatically turn off after a period of time.

If you choose **【AUTO】**, the system will automatically control the heating function on and off according to the exterior temperature.

This function can melt the ice and snow at the nozzle and avoid nozzle clogging.

i NOTICE

- › Please choose a washer fluid suitable for cold weather. Otherwise even if there is a nozzle heating function, the washer fluid cannot be sprayed due to freezing.

- › When the vehicle is not started, do not use the function for a long time to prevent the draining of the battery voltage.

Winter mode

In the cold season, when the vehicle is stationary and the exterior temperature is lower than 5 °C, the wipers will automatically enter the winter mode and will not wipe even if the automatic wiping conditions are met when they are in the **【AUTO】** position. This is to avoid damage to the wiper motor or wiper blades caused by turning on the auto wipe when the wipers are frozen.

If you need to turn on the wipers in winter mode, you can manually turn on the wiper mist, low speed or high speed function.

The wipers will exit the winter mode automatically when the exterior temperature is higher than 5 °C or the vehicle is starting off.

i NOTICE

The winter mode is triggered only once each time the vehicle is started.

Wiper control

CAUTION

Before using the wipers in the cold season, be sure to check whether the wiper blades are frozen on the windscreen. If the wiper blades have been frozen on the windscreen, use them after unfreezing. Otherwise, the wiper blades and wiper motor may be damaged.

Front wiper heating

For vehicles with front wiper heating function, the front wiper heating function will be activated or deactivated simultaneously with the front defroster function of the A/C system. When this function is activated, the situation for the front wiper blade frozen onto the windscreen will be improved gradually.

WARNING

When the front wiper heating function is activated, the front windscreen glass lower part or the side of the front pillar will become very hot, so touching it is prohibited and be careful of burns.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the function for a long time to prevent the draining of the battery voltage.







Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For the further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

A/C setting interface




B4821C238463

- › Once the A/C is activated, touch the warming  or cooling  button at the left of the multimedia display to adjust the temperature level.
Once the A/C is activated, touch the value between the warming  or cooling  button to call up the temperature adjustment panel.
- › Touch the left-most airflow button  of the multimedia display to enter into or exit from the A/C setting interface.
Once the A/C is activated, the currently set air volume gear is displayed at the bottom of the A/C setting interface.
- › Touch the front defroster button  to activate or deactivate the front defroster function. This button goes on, indicating that the front defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting and fogging of the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually eliminated.

NOTICE

If your vehicle is equipped with the front wiper heating function, the function will be synchronised if the front defroster function is enabled.

A/C system

- › Touch the **【OFF】** button to turn off the A/C system.
- › Touch the internal and external circulation button  to make the A/C system switch between the internal and external circulation modes.






The button goes on, indicating that the internal circulation mode is activated. The button goes out, indicating that the external circulation mode is activated, and the exterior air can be introduced into the vehicle at this time.

i NOTICE

- › Normally, the external circulation mode should be used. Using the internal circulation mode tends to cause windows to fog, especially when the compressor is turned off.
- › The internal circulation mode should be used under circumstances such as driving through a tunnel, in traffic jams, dirty air outside the vehicle or when quick cooling and heating is desired.
- › Touch the **【AUTO】** button to activate the automatic mode. This button goes on, indicating that the automatic mode is activated, and the A/C system will automatically perform cooling or heating according to the set temperature, and adjust the airflow distribution mode and airflow.

i NOTICE

If the airflow distribution mode and the airflow automatically adjusted by the A/C system cannot meet your demand, you can perform manual adjustment. In this case, the system will exit the AUTO mode, and the button will go out.

- › Touch the **【A/C】** button to turn on or off the compressor. The A/C button goes on, indicating that the compressor is activated. In this case, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle can be reduced by lowering the set temperature.
- › Once the A/C is activated, slide the temperature value in the A/C setting interface to adjust the A/C temperature.
- › Touch the blowing mode button , , ,  to select the corresponding blowing mode.
- › Touch the airflow gear  next to the airflow icon to adjust the airflow.

A/C system





1

Operation

A/C control panel



AA89446608F2


- › Press the button  to turn on or off the A/C system. The indicator light on the button goes on, indicating that the A/C is turned on.
- › Press the **【AUTO】** button to activate the automatic mode. The indicator light on the button goes on, indicating that the automatic mode is activated, and the A/C system will automatically perform cooling or heating according to the set temperature, and adjust the airflow distribution mode and airflow.
- › Press the **【A/C】** button to turn on or off the compressor. The indicator light on the button goes on, indicating that the compressor is activated. In this case, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle can be reduced by lowering the set temperature.
- › Press the airflow decrease button  to decrease the airflow.
- › Press the airflow increase button  to increase the airflow.
- › Press the front defroster button  to activate or deactivate the front defroster function. The indicator light on the button goes on, indicating that the front defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting and fogging of the front windscreen and the side door glass can be gradually eliminated.

i NOTICE

If the automatic adjustment function of the A/C cannot meet your needs, you can perform the manual adjustment. In this case, the automatic mode will be exited and the indicator light will go out.

i NOTICE

If your vehicle is equipped with the front wiper heating function, the function will be synchronised if the front defroster function is enabled.

- › Press the rear defroster button  to activate or deactivate the rear defroster function. The indicator light on the button goes on, indicating that the rear defroster function is activated. In this case, the frosting or fogging of the rear windscreen can be gradually eliminated.

A/C system


The rear defrost function will automatically deactivate after a period of time, and the indicator light on the button will go out.

WARNING

After the rear defrosting function is activated, do not touch the rear wind-screen to avoid scalding.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is not started, do not use the rear defroster function for a long time, so as to prevent the draining of the battery voltage.

- › Press the internal and external circulation button  to switch between the internal and external circulation modes. The indicator light on the button goes on, indicating that the internal circulation mode is activated. The indicator light on the button goes out, indicating that the external circulation mode is activated.

A/C control

Cooling/heating

After starting the vehicle:

1. Select the **【AUTO】** mode and the corresponding indicator light will turn on. At this moment, the compressor will be automatically turned on or off depending on the temperature and the environment.

2. Set the temperature to your desired value. The A/C system will automatically adjust the airflow distribution mode and the airflow to achieve the set temperature.
3. Selecting the internal circulation mode may speed up cooling or heating and help to improve the economy and comfort of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- › When the vehicle is exposed to the burning sun for a long time, the temperature inside the vehicle will be very high. In this case, if you need to drive the vehicle, you are recommended to lower all the windows for ventilation and then enable the A/C cooling mode. After the heat inside the vehicle is dissipated, raise all the windows.
- › After the A/C temperature is set, the A/C system will automatically control the working state of the cooling system and the heating system according to the ambient temperature inside and outside the vehicle. After the A/C system is turned on in the cold season, the heating system needs to warm up for a period of time before it can work normally. Before the heating system finishes the warming up, the A/C system may not distribute warm air, and its airflow is small. This is normal.

Front defroster/front defogger

After starting the vehicle:

1. Select the front defroster mode, and the corresponding indicator light will turn on.
2. You can also adjust the airflow or the temperature, turn on or off the compressor, or switch between the internal and external circulation modes on demand.

i NOTICE

It is recommended to switch to the external circulation mode if inside air is heavily polluted or the interior is fogged up.

A CAUTION

- › Check the radiator and the A/C condenser on a regular basis. Use a low-pressure water gun or a soft brush to remove the leaves, insects and dust from their front surfaces. Otherwise, these objects will block the air flow, thereby reducing the cooling effect.
- › Running the A/C regularly keeps the compressor and seals well lubricated and prevents leakage. Therefore, even in the cold season when A/C is not required, it is necessary to run the A/C at least once a week for more than 10 minutes each time.
- › If the A/C system does not cool as well as before, head to the authorised service centre for maintenance.

- › Direct discharge of refrigerant into the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and the refrigerant should be recovered by trained and certified technicians using appropriate containers.

i NOTICE

About the A/C odour

› Source of the odour

Internal and external air exchange should be carried out for A/C as its long-term use may gather dirt which will go mouldy after a long time, resulting in odour.

The A/C filter will accumulate water vapour, dust, etc. after use for a long time, resulting in odour.

› Recommended measures

When the outside air is fresh, the external circulation mode is recommended for use to keep the air inside the vehicle circulating.

When the vehicle is in cooling mode, you are recommended to turn off the **【A/C】** switch first and let the A/C continue running for about 3~5 minutes before turning off the A/C system. This will dry off the A/C evaporator and the A/C system to prevent mould growth and reduce odours.

A/C system

When you feel the odour is very strong, you are recommended to head to the authorised service centre for check. Clean or replace the A/C filter element, if necessary.

A/C outlet

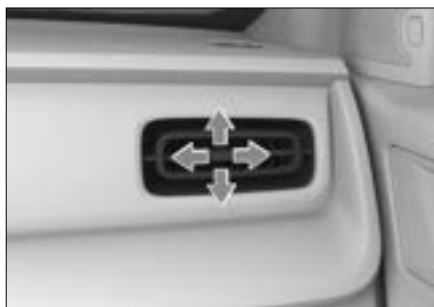
Front A/C centre outlets



00C4E2ABC770

Move air vanes at the centre of centre outlets to regulate the airflow direction. Slide the slats as indicated by the left-to-close marking ☒ ⇐ or right-to-close marking ⇒ ☒ to the limit position to close the air vent.

Front A/C side outlet



A59A18AD5653

Move the air vanes at the centre of outlets to regulate the airflow direction.

Slide the vane as indicated by the right to close marking ⇒ ☒ to the limit positions to close the outlet.

Rear A/C outlets



B9F0B09AF072

Move the air vanes at the centre of outlets to regulate the airflow direction. Slide the slats as indicated by the left-to-close marking ☒ ⇐ or right-to-close marking ⇒ ☒ to the limit position to close the air vent.

Glove box outlet adjustment



FADB8BDD1081

Pull up the ventilation valve in the storage case to open it. Press the valve down to close it.

i NOTICE

The ventilation temperature in the storage case is affected by the working state of the A/C system.

- › Only when the A/C system is in face-blowing or feet-blowing mode, the air flow of the A/C system can be introduced into the storage case. Therefore, cold air is generally introduced into the storage case.
- › When the A/C system is used for heating, if it is manually switched to the face-blowing or the feet and face-blowing mode, hot air is introduced into the storage case at this time.

Mobile phone wireless charging

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Mobile phone wireless charging

The wireless charging function can be activated or deactivated through **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Wireless charger】** on the multimedia display screen.



0E9AB34E32A9

After activating the wireless charging function, switch the power supply to ON mode or start the vehicle, and place the mobile phone supporting the wireless charging function in the charging area for charging.

i NOTICE

- › To achieve a better charging effect, place the charging coil area of the mobile phone facing down.
- › This function is not applicable to all mobile phones, but only to mobile phones that have passed the "Qi" of official standard certification and can be normally placed in the charging area.
- › Only one mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- › On bumpy roads, intermittent stopping and resuming of wireless charging may occur. If the mobile phone deviates from the charging area and the charging stops, move the mobile phone back to the chargeable area.
- › It is normal that wireless charging devices and mobile phones will get hot during charging.

When the temperature is too high, the system will stop charging, and will continue charging after the temperature drops.

- › If the mobile phone is faulty, this may also cause it to fail to be charged. Other mobile phones that meet the requirements can be used for wireless charging detection to confirm whether the mobile phone is faulty.

Mobile phone wireless charging

1

Operation

- › If the mobile phone is equipped with a protective cover or an accessory that does not support wireless charging, take out it first; otherwise, the mobile cannot be charged normally.
- › The actual charging power may vary or decrease due to factors such as the mobile phone brand, model, and current battery level. For mobile phones with a small inductive coil, use the brand-specific wireless charger for high-power charging, as using the on-board wireless charging module may result in reduced power.
- › Due to the position of the charging coil, foldable phones need to align their coils with the vehicle's wireless charging coil in order to charge; otherwise, it may result in slow charging or no charging at all.
- › To prevent draining the battery voltage, do not use the wireless charging function for a long time when the vehicle is not started.
- › To use the charging area as a storage position, deactivate the wireless charging function.

⚠ WARNING

- › For the sake of safety, drivers should not perform charging related operations during driving.

- › Do not place coins, keys, chip cards and other metal objects in the charging area. Otherwise, metal objects may be heated, which may lead to abnormal charging or safety accidents.

If metal foreign objects are found in the charging area during charging, do not remove them by hand to avoid scalding your fingers. You should deactivate the wireless charging function immediately, and wait a few minutes before removing foreign objects.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not spray any liquid at the charging area, so as to avoid the liquid seeping into the wireless charging system through the clearance of rubber mat, which may lead to system failure.
- › Do not modify the wireless charging system to avoid damage to the vehicle or accidents.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Sun visor



99AC10627BBB

The drivers can flip the sun visor to block out the sunlight when the sunlight from the front affects their sight.



F9D77D2083F2

The drivers can unhook and flip the sun visor to block out the sunlight when the sunlight from the side affects their sight.

Vanity mirror



590E2356A4F0

There is a vanity mirror installed to the interior of the sun visor. Simply flip the mirror cover to use.

Close the cover when not using the vanity mirror.

Storage devices

Glove box



A30AA3AA622C

Pull the handle on the glove box and flip down to open it.

Flip up to close the glove box and ensure that it is fully closed.

Interior equipment

1

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the glove box is closed when driving. Otherwise, the items may be thrown out from the glove box in case of accident or emergency braking, and lead to personal injury.

Storage case



DB0F90DF351F

There is storage space below the front armrest. When using, just flip up the armrest and open it.



FA8CE23AD8CB

The storage case is located in front of the front armrest. The storage case can be slid back and forth for a certain distance. Slide it backwards to see the cup holder at the bottom.

This storage case is suitable for placing small items such as mobile phones, keys, wallets, etc. It may not be convenient to take when other oversized items are placed.

Sunglasses case



476F036E637B

Flip the sunglasses case down to open it.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the sunglasses case has been closed when driving.

i NOTICE

Certain oversized sunglasses models may not fit to this case.

Interior equipment

Cup holder



Slide the storage case backwards to see the cup holder.

⚠ WARNING

- › When placing hot drinks, be careful to avoid burns.
- › Only place beverage cans of suitable size and with lids in the cup holder. Do not place small or unstable beverage cans in the cup holder, or they may tip over or fall out of the cup holder, thus causing an accident or personal injury.

Ensure that beverage cans are intact and their lids are securely closed. Otherwise, the liquid may spill, potentially damaging electronic equipment in the vehicle, soiling the interior, or causing personal injury.

- › If items are not properly stored in the vehicle, they may slip or be thrown up and strike the driver and passengers. Likewise, in case of an accident, items stored in cup holders, mobile holders and open storage spaces may accidentally move and cause personal injury, especially during emergency braking or sudden steering.

Bottle holder

There is a bottle holder at the inside of each door.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything other than bottles inside the bottle holder. Otherwise, such items may be dislodged from the bottle holder and lead to personal injuries. In case of accident or emergency braking.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the lid of the bottle is closed to avoid spilling liquid.

Interior equipment

Luggage hook



7FB136C42504

The luggage hook is located near the front passenger's storage box. Press and flip the luggage hook in the direction of the arrow. The hook allows the suspension of light weight items only and the maximum load must not exceed the weight marked on the luggage hook. Make sure that all items are secured before driving.

Power supply port

i NOTICE

Although you can use the power supply port to supply power to electrical equipment with the power supply in ON mode, it is still recommended to start the vehicle for using the power supply port. This avoids prolonged battery discharge, preventing a low battery and ensuring normal vehicle start.

Front USB power supply (type I)



66D8AB428BBA

The front Type-C power supply port and USB power supply port are located near the front A/C outlet.

It can be used when the power supply is in ON mode. This power supply port can be used to charge the devices such as mobiles and tablets.

Front USB power supply (type II)



12F81A1C0829

The front USB power supply port is near the front A/C outlet.

It can be used when the power supply is in ON mode. This power supply port can be used to charge the devices such as mobiles and tablets.

Interior equipment

Rear USB power supply



3922F3642335

The rear USB power supply port is near the rear A/C outlet.
It can be used when the power supply is in ON mode. This power supply port can be used to charge the devices such as mobiles and tablets.

12 V power supply



1582464AD339

The 12 V power supply is located near the front A/C outlet.
When the power supply is in ON mode, the standby power supply will be energized. Open the cover when using.
It is a 12 V DC power supply, and it can be used for the electric equipment whose rated power is less than or equal to 120 W.

Driving recorder power supply



9AFA9175DE57

The power supply port of the driving recorder is located near the base of the interior rearview mirror.
This power supply port can be used when the power supply is in ON mode .
This power supply is designed to provide a 5 V DC power supply for driving recorders whose rated power is less than or equal to 10 W.

NOTICE
 For driving safety, be careful not to block the line of sight to prevent danger when installing a driving recorder.

Reserved power supply connector

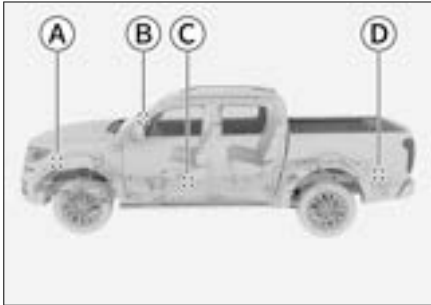
The reserved power supply connector is a sealed wire with a voltage power label affixed to it. Please use this power supply only after starting the vehicle, as it may not function properly otherwise.

Interior equipment

1

Operation

Power supply connector position



71E8FC57A8E6

- Ⓐ The 12 V-1 power supply connector is located near the engine compartment battery.

It is a 12 V DC power supply, and it can be used for the electric equipment whose rated power is less than or equal to 300 W.

- Ⓑ The roof power supply connector is located in the middle of the left front pillar.

It is a 12 V DC power supply, and it can be used for the electric equipment whose rated power is less than or equal to 150 W.

The pillar guard plate needs to be removed during use. It is recommended that you contact the authorised service centre for help.

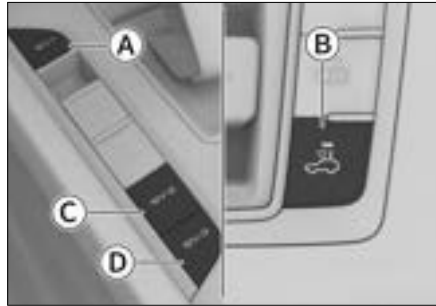
- Ⓒ The 12 V-2 power supply connector is located under the front left seat.

It is a 12 V DC power supply, and it can be used for the electric equipment whose rated power is less than or equal to 100 W.

- Ⓓ The 12 V-3 power supply connector is located near the rear of the left side frame.

It is a 12 V DC power supply, and it can be used for the electric equipment whose rated power is less than or equal to 150 W.

Power supply switch



F29BC8D33A35

- Ⓐ 12 V-1 power supply switch

Located near the shift lever

- Ⓑ Roof power supply switch

Located near the reading light

- Ⓒ 12 V-2 power supply switch

Located near the shift lever

- Ⓓ 12 V-3 power supply switch

Located near the shift lever

Pressing the power supply switch can control the corresponding circuit make-break.

Interior equipment

i NOTICE

Only some models are equipped with reserved power supply connectors. For vehicles equipped with reserved power supply connectors, the number of power supply connectors may vary. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Flammable gases and heaters must be away from the power supply port.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Avoid liquids such as beverages or foreign objects to enter the power supply port, as this could cause issues like short circuits. If the power supply port has a cover, close the cover when it is not in use.
- › If you use an attachment that exceeds the rated power, the vehicle fuse may be burnt out.
- › Do not connect precision devices, highly sensitive equipment or other important equipment to this power supply port.
- › Do not use the power supply port in humid and high-temperature environments.
- › Never use it in parallel or in series with any other power supply.

- › If you find any abnormal conditions (unusually high temperature, smoke, odour, etc.) during use, please stop using the power supply immediately and contact the authorised service centre for inspection and repair.
- › The external wiring harness should be waterproof and sealed.

2

Driving

| | | | |
|---|-----|--|-----|
| Driving procedures..... | 98 | Tyre pressure monitoring system | 159 |
| Advice on driving in harsh environments | 104 | Fatigue driving reminder system | 161 |
| Advice on driving during break-in period..... | 112 | Cruise control..... | 163 |
| Power supply switch | 114 | Intelligent driving assist system | 166 |
| Starting and shutting down the vehicle | 116 | Off-road cruise control assist system..... | 189 |
| Parking brake | 119 | Steering assist..... | 192 |
| Gear shifting (MT) | 123 | Driving assist system..... | 194 |
| Gear shifting (AT) | 126 | Emission control system..... | 199 |
| Steering wheel assist modes | 131 | Instrument panel (type I)..... | 206 |
| Driving modes..... | 132 | Instrument panel (type II).... | 212 |
| All-terrain control system.... | 138 | Instrument panel indicator lights | 218 |
| Off-road expert mode..... | 143 | | |
| 4WD system..... | 144 | | |
| Differential lock switch | 147 | | |
| Parking assist system..... | 151 | | |
| Blind spot imaging system .. | 157 | | |

Driving procedures

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Before driving

Removing debris

Remove the snow and fallen leaves, etc. before driving.

Checking vehicle conditions

Check tyres, fluid, lights and body appearance before driving to ensure your safe and pleasant driving.

If your vehicle requires maintenance or repair, get in touch with the authorised service centre in a timely manner.

Confirming vehicle doors and bonnet status

Before driving, confirm all vehicle doors are closed. If a vehicle door has not been closed properly, it may open unexpectedly during the driving and cause an accident.

Before driving, if you have opened the bonnet, confirm that the bonnet has been locked down. If the bonnet has not been locked properly, it may open during driving and cause an accident.

Placing objects in-vehicle

On the instrument panel

Do not place any item on the instrument panel. The items placed on the instrument panel may not only obstruct the driver's view, but also affect the starting off and safe driving, which may lead to accidents.

The driver's feet well

Do not place any items at the feet well of the driver. Items placed at the driver's feet well may be trapped under pedals, causing the driver to lose control of the vehicle, which leads to an accident.

If you want to use a floor mat, choose a suitable floor mat. If the selected floor mat shape and its layout position are inappropriate or if the floor mat is double stacked, pedal performance may be affected, which could lead to problems in starting the vehicle, braking, or difficulties in changing gear, and could result in an accident.

Under the seat

Do not place any items under the seat. Items placed under the seat will make it difficult to adjust the seat position or fasten the seat, which can easily lead to an accident.

Driving procedures

2

Driving

Seat backrest

Do not place cushions and other items between the seat backrest and the back of the human body. Otherwise, the correct driving posture will be affected; besides, in the event of a vehicle collision, seat belts and head restraints will not function properly and provide full protection, and even serious life-threatening injuries will occur.

On the window glass

Do not attach decorative items like vacuum suction cups to window glass.

Vacuum suction cups can act as a lens, leading to a higher risk of fires.

Precautions for driving

No speeding

The vehicle should not exceed the speed indicated by speed limit signs or mark lines.

No overloading

Overloaded driving is dangerous.

Do not carry passengers or goods more than what is on the indicated maximum limit. Do not carry passengers in the luggage area or the luggage compartment.

No fatigue driving

Fatigue driving is extremely dangerous as the judgement, view and attention of the driver in fatigue state will drop substantially. It can easily cause a serious accident.

Not shutting down the engine

The brake booster and power steering system will not function if the engine does not work, which may lead to deterioration of braking efficiency, and cause severe accidents.

No turning the steering wheel full-lock for a long time

Turning the steering wheel full-lock for a long time may reduce the power assist effect of the steering system and you may feel heavier when turning the steering wheel.

No applying the brake for a long time

While driving, do not continuously step on the brake pedal or apply the parking brake. Otherwise it may lead to premature wear-and-tear in the brake pad or overheating in the brake, thereby affecting the braking efficiency and possibly leading to accidents.

Brake emitting a warning sound

The disc brake will emit a warning sound when the brake pad wears and needs to be replaced.

If you hear a rattling sound while braking, do not continue driving. Otherwise, this will severely wear the brake disk, damage the brake parts and affect the braking efficiency or even lead to an accident.

Driving procedures

Flat tyre

Do not continue to drive the vehicle with a flat tyre. Driving with a flat tyre is extremely dangerous and can easily cause a serious accident. In addition, tyres, wheels, suspension and vehicle body will be damaged. At this moment, replace the tyre immediately.

When any of the following situations occurs, confirm whether the vehicle tyre is punctured or flat:

- › The steering wheel shakes.
- › The vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- › The vehicle is leaning at an abnormal angle.

If a tyre is flat or punctured during driving, hold the steering wheel firmly and gently step on the brake pedal to slow down. Emergency braking or turning the steering wheel sharply may lead the vehicle to go out of control.

A strong impact on chassis, tyres, and wheels of the vehicle

When the chassis, tyres, and wheels of the vehicle suffer a strong impact, stop the vehicle immediately in a safe spot and inspect the vehicle. Check for leakage in brake fluid and fuel, and for deformation or damage to suspension, tyres, wheels, drive system, etc. If you find signs of leakage or damage, do not continue to drive the vehicle. Failure to adhere to the advice may lead to accidents.

Driving downhill

Using engine assist braking

If you continuously depress the brake pedal while driving downhill, the brake may overheat, thereby compromising the braking efficiency and making the occurrence of accidents more likely.

No shutting down the engine or coasting in N gear position

If the engine stops when you go downhill, the brake booster and power steering system will not work, resulting in poor braking efficiency. Thus, the steering wheel will be heavy to operate, and accidents are more likely to occur.

Driving on uneven road surfaces

When stopping the vehicle on a curb or on a road surface with a height difference, make sure that the tyres are not crushed and deformed by the curb or other obstacles.

When the vehicle must pass a curb, a speed bump or a similar obstacle, you should try to slow down along the vertical angle of the obstacle. Failure to do so may result in damage to the tyre (especially to the side wall of the tyre).

Driving in the following road conditions may cause damage to the bumper. Slow down and drive carefully.

- › Road sections with steps such as parking lot entrances and exits;
- › Steep slopes such as sharp turns in multi-story parking lots;

Driving procedures

2

Driving

- › Potholes and rutted roads;
- › Sections of road where there are potholes;
- › Driving from a flat section to a ramp, or from a ramp to a flat section;
- › Parking on a road with speed bumps or along a curb.

Driving on slippery road surfaces, such as wet, snowy or icy road surfaces

Emergency braking, sudden acceleration, or turning steering wheel sharply on slippery road surfaces may cause vehicle tyres to skid and the vehicle to go out of control, thereby causing an accident.

For an MT vehicle, in upshifting or downshifting, the engine speed changes significantly, which can easily cause the vehicle to slide sideways and thus cause an accident.

In cold weather, you should slow down when driving in areas that are prone to freezing, such as bridges and shady areas.

Driving on flooded roads

Be careful while driving on flooded roads.

Driving on flooded roads may lead to engine shutting down, short circuit of electrical components or engine damage, all of which may cause a major accident.

While you drive on flooded roads, the brake pads will become wet and the braking efficiency will be reduced, which can easily lead to accidents. Step gently and repeatedly on the brake pedal in order to warm up the brake until full brake performance has been recovered.

Precautions for passengers

Moving within the vehicle is forbidden

It is forbidden for the passenger to leave his or her seat, or to move around inside the vehicle. Otherwise, during emergency braking, the passenger's body or head, etc., may suffer injurious impact.

Do not extend your hands or head outside the vehicle window or sunroof

If you stretch your hands or head out of the vehicle, it is prone to hitting against the window frame when braking the vehicle in emergency or closing the window. In this case, it may cause serious injury or even death.

Driving procedures

Do not carry child passengers on your lap

When riding as a passenger, do not carry infant or child passengers on your lap even if you are already wearing a seat belt. Further, do not surround or enclose the infant or child using any part of the seat belt; this may cause grievous injury or even death during collisions or emergency braking.

Child passengers must not be allowed to operate equipment such as vehicle doors, vehicle windows and the sunroof

If child passengers are allowed to operate doors, windows and sunroof, they are at risk of clipping their hands, heads, necks, etc., in the operation, which will result in a serious personal injury.

If the vehicle door is opened during the driving, children, if not restrained correctly, could fall out of the vehicle, consequently causing serious injuries and even death.

Please use a child safety lock and a window lock switch to prevent children from accidents because of an incorrect operation.

Parking the vehicle

Do not park the vehicle close to flammable materials

Do not park your vehicle near flammable materials such as areas with plenty of grass/hay or scrap paper. Fires may be triggered by contact between the hot exhaust pipe and flammable materials.

If there is wood or plywood in the rear of the vehicle, keep the parking distance. If the distance is too close, it may cause fire.

Do not run the vehicle for a long time in poorly ventilated places

Allowing the engine to idle for extended periods in poorly ventilated areas such as garages can cause exhaust gas build-up, thereby causing severe injury or even death by carbon monoxide poisoning.

Economic driving

Predictable driving

Maintain a proper distance with the front running vehicle and avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking. A stable vehicle speed can reduce fuel consumption.

Selecting the appropriate gear to drive

Avoid the high-gear low-speed or low-gear high-speed driving, and maintain the engine at low speed to reduce fuel consumption and wear.

Driving procedures

2

Driving

Reducing idling operation

If you need to stop for a long time when you are at a traffic light junction, a railway crossing or a traffic jam, you shall turn off the engine to reduce unnecessary fuel consumption.

Avoiding unnecessary weight

The loaded and overloaded driving of the vehicle will increase fuel consumption. Before driving, remove unnecessary items from the vehicle.

Checking tyre pressure periodically

Too small tyre pressure will increase the rolling resistance, thus increasing fuel consumption and tyre wear.

Regular maintenance

Regular maintenance ensures a longer service life and the best economy of your vehicle.

Turning off temporarily unnecessary electrical components

Electrical components such as A/C and heating device require a lot of energy and consume fuel, so turn off these electrical components when they are not used.

Closing windows and sunroof

Opening the windows or sunroof increases the windage, thereby increasing fuel consumption, so turn them off when you do not need them.

Coasting

The accelerator pedal shall be released when you approach the red traffic light or go down a large slope, allowing the vehicle to take advantage of coasting.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving in foggy weather

Turn on the fog lamps

While driving in fog, you should turn on the fog lamps.

Sound horn to warn pedestrians and vehicles

If you hear the horn of other vehicles, respond immediately by honking your horn to indicate your position.

Drive at low speed and look out for safety

When driving in foggy weather, try to travel at a low speed and keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

Do not wipe fog on the glass during vehicle running

Due to large temperature difference inside and outside the cab, mist may condensates on the inside surface of the windscreen that can affect driver's sight. In this case, you can use the A/C defrosting function or open the vehicle windows a little to have the same air temperature inside and outside the vehicle. This will prevent condensation to form on the inside surface of windscreen.

If you wish to wipe away the condensation on the windscreen glass, please do so only after bringing the vehicle to a stop. Never try to do so while driving the vehicle.

Driving in the rain

Please drive carefully on slippery road surfaces

As poor vision, foggy windscreen and slippery roads are likely to occur when running on rainy days, please drive carefully.

When performing emergency braking, steering and accelerating on a slippery road, tyres may slip, making it difficult to control the vehicle, which may lead to an accident.

While driving in rain, water film can form between the tyre and the ground. At this time the tyre can easily lose its grip, so for safe driving you should slow down.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

WARNING

Try to avoid driving in a heavy rain or a rainstorm.

Fording drive

When the vehicle is driving in still water, the fording depth of the vehicle should be lower than the maximum allowable value. When the vehicle is driving in flowing water, the fording depth should be lower than driving in still water.

For vehicles with high inlet pipes, the maximum allowable fording depth is 700 mm.

For vehicles without high inlet pipes, the maximum allowable fording depth is 500 mm.

In fording drive, pay attention to the waves the preceding vehicle and the on-coming vehicle made. This will cause the fording depth exceeds the maximum permissible value.

When the fording depth is within 50 to 100 mm, the vehicle speed should be no more than 40 km/h (25 mph). If the vehicle runs quickly, the water will be splashed which may be inhaled by the air filter intake and make the air filter element wet, so that the maintenance period may be reduced.

When the fording depth is within 100 to 350 mm, the vehicle speed should be no more than 15 km/h (9 mph).

When the fording depth is greater than 350 mm and less than the maximum allowable value, the vehicle speed should be no more than 10 km/h (6 mph). Do not stop or change gear positions mid-way.

Precautions for fording drive

- › Before fording drive, confirm the water depth of the road area. If there is more water or the water depth is unknown, drive to take a detour and do not go through a direct course.
- › Analyse the road conditions and do not drive into an unfamiliar area where there may be hidden obstacles such as ditches or manholes.
- › Do not attempt to restart the vehicle if it is accidentally stalled during fording. Otherwise, serious engine damage may be caused.

Inspection and maintenance after fording

Promptly do the following after safely driving through water:

- › Test the horn.
- › Test all the vehicle lights.
- › Depress the brake pedal lightly several times and check whether all brake functions are working.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › Avoid stopping immediately and continue driving for 5 to 10 minutes to prevent rusting of parts such as the turbocharger and the actuator tie rod. During driving, you can accelerate the vehicle by slightly depressing the accelerator pedal to confirm whether there is a persistent noise (a sound from metal parts rubbing against each other).
- › Go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for routine inspection. During fording drive, water may enter the components and parts of transmission system and dilute lubricant, which may lead to system malfunctions.

CAUTION

- › Fording drive cannot be used as a part of routine driving.
- › You should be careful during fording drive.
If possible, you should avoid fording drive. Choose safe and reliable way to drive if necessary.
- › Fording drive may damage the engine and electrical components.

In hot weather

Hot weather and high temperature in summer are bad for the normal vehicle running and the health of driver. To ensure driving safety, the driver shall pay attention to the following items:

To prevent the engine from overheating

The engine is prone to overheating in the hot season due to higher ambient temperature. Therefore, please step up the inspection and maintenance of the engine cooling system, and remove debris embedded in the radiator chips.

Preventing flat tyre

As air pressure in the vehicle tyre rises with temperature increase, flat tyre is likely to occur in case of hot weather and high temperature in hot season.

If you experience a flat tyre in the course of the drive, hold the steering wheel securely, step gently on the brake pedal to decelerate, and avoid actions such as emergency braking or sudden steering. Failure to adhere to the advice may cause the vehicle to go out of control.

Preventing sunstroke

Strong sunlight and high temperature in hot season easily lead to sunstroke. Keep the driving room well ventilated and prohibit fatigue driving.

WARNING

Never leave a child in the vehicle unattended.

- › Leaving children alone in the vehicle during hot seasons can easily cause heat stroke, dehydration, personal injury or even death.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › If the child, left alone in the vehicle, plays with matches, lighters other items, it is easy to cause vehicle fire accidents.

! CAUTION

When parking the vehicle, do not leave items such as lighters, spray can, soft drink cans, spectacles, etc., inside the vehicle.

- › As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, a leakage of gas from the lighter, spray cans or cracks in these containers can lead to fire.
- › Should a soft drink can burst inside the vehicle, its contents may splash onto electrical components and cause short circuit.
- › As temperatures inside the vehicle can get very high, it is easy to make resin lens or glasses deformation, resulting in crack.

Driving in cold weather

In cold weather, vehicles may accumulate snow or ice and moving parts such as door handles, windows, side mirrors and wipers may be frozen. To protect your vehicle from freezing and to use it normally, please follow the suggestions below to ensure the best possible driving experience in cold weather.

Preparations before driving

Before the cold weather comes or when driving to cold areas, please make the following preparations:

- › Check that the windscreen washer fluid is suitable for the local temperature to prevent damage to the vehicle caused by frozen washer fluid.
 - › Check the coolant type. Please use the coolant specified for this vehicle to ensure that it has good anti-freeze protection.
 - › Check the oil type. Please use the oil specified for this vehicle.
 - › The battery performance decreases in cold weather. Please contact the authorised service centre for battery inspection to ensure that there is sufficient power to start the vehicle.
 - › According to different driving conditions, you can prepare emergency supplies in advance, such as signal flashers, snow removal shovels, window scrapers, jumper cables, etc.
- You can obtain a more comfortable driving experience by the following methods:
- › Start the vehicle in advance and turn on the A/C, seat heating and other functions to make the interior more comfortable.
 - › Pay attention to removing snow and water stains from door handles after parking to prevent them from freezing.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › In cold weather, the road surface may be covered with snow or ice. To improve vehicle passability and reduce vehicle sideslip, you can contact the authorised service centre to install winter tyres or tyre chains.

Diesel vehicle models

In cold weather, if the vehicle fails to start due to diesel fuel unsuitable for the temperature, avoid pouring hot water over the high-pressure fuel pump and related fuel pipes, as this could cause mechanical failure.

If one of the above situation occurs, please contact the authorised service centre for help, or move the vehicle to a warm environment and wait until the vehicle temperature recovers.

Winter tyres

In cold weather when the temperature is low, due to the special characteristics of the normal tyres (tyre width, rubber composition and pattern type, etc.), the elasticity of tyres decreases, further weakening the traction and braking force. At the same time, the tyres noise will be increased. In severe cases, it can even lead to serious cracks, abnormal wear and tear and other permanent damage of normal tyres. It is recommended to use winter tyres when the temperature is lower than 7°C in cold weather. Winter tyres can not only greatly improve the vehicle control stability, but also improve the vehicle braking response and shorten the braking distance.

NOTICE

Although all-weather tyres with M + S markings are better for cold weather, they fail to achieve the performance of winter tyres. Therefore, it is still necessary to use winter tyres for driving on snowy or icy roads.

WARNING

Although winter tyres can improve the vehicle driving performance in winter, do not drive at risk situation, and still keep cautious!

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › Be sure to adjust your speed and driving style based on visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions.
- › Do not exceed the speed limit and load rating indicated on the installed winter tyres when driving.

CAUTION

When the pattern of winter tyres is severely worn, their effectiveness for the cold weather will be significantly reduced. If winter tyres have aged, their effectiveness for the cold weather will be significantly reduced even though the tyre pattern wear is insignificant. Consult the dealer for specific replacement standards of winter tyres.

Instructions for using winter tyres:

- › Comply with the relevant laws and regulations of the country where the winter tyres are used.
- › Install winter tyres on the four wheels at the same time.
- › Use winter tyres having the same size as the normal tyre.
- › Use winter tyres having the same model, size (rolling circumference) and type.
- › Only use winter tyres during the cold season.

- › Be sure to comply with the allowable maximum limits for winter tyres (maximum speed, maximum load, etc.). Otherwise, tyres may be damaged, causing traffic accidents.
- › Do not reverse the rotation direction of the tyres.

Tyre chains

The use of tyre chains varies according to the current standards in specific countries or regions, and the installation of tyre chains must comply with local regulations.

Install tyre chains on the drive wheels only. Do not install tyre chains on only one tyre. Install tyre chains following the instructions provided by the tyre chain manufacturer and tighten them as tightly as possible.

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions when installing tyre chains:

- › Improper size or installation of tyre chains will damage the vehicle brake pipeline, the suspension, the body and tyres, etc. Choose suitable tyre chains and install them properly.
- › Install tyre chains in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and place the warning triangle behind the vehicle.
- › Always set the power supply mode to OFF and apply the parking brake before installing the tyre chains.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

- › Do not install tyre chains on emergency wheels.
- › Do not install tyre chains when the tyre pressure is low.
- › Do not damage the aluminium alloy wheel rim when using tyre chains.

- › Slow down before entering the curve, so that you can control the vehicle.
- › Remove the tyre chains when driving on road surfaces without snow, or they may affect driving performance and severely damage tyres.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions when driving with tyre chains:

- › After installing tyre chains, the driving speed should not exceed 40 km/h (25 mph) or the maximum speed recommended by the tyre chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.
- › After installing tyre chains, always check that the tyre chains are properly installed after travelling 0.5 to 1.0 km (0.3 to 0.6 miles) to ensure safety. Retighten or reinstall the tyre chains if they are loose.
- › After tyre chains are installed, the vehicle control may be adversely affected. To minimise the risk of accidents, avoid sudden acceleration, sharp turns, and emergency braking whenever possible.
- › When driving, if you hear the tyre chains knocking on the vehicle body or chassis, stop the vehicle and retighten the tyre chains. If you can still hear the sound, slow down until the sound disappears.
- › Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.

Driving tips

In cold weather, please drive with due care and attention to the snow and ice on the road.

- › When driving on snowy roads, snow may accumulate on the wheel fenders. Be sure to check and clean it promptly to prevent steering difficulties or a reduced steering angle.
- › If the front and rear windscreens and side mirrors are blocked by snow, clean it in time. At the same time, you can improve driving visibility using the defrosting function.
- › Avoid emergency braking, sudden acceleration, and sharp turns. Otherwise, the tyres may slip sideways, causing you to lose control over the vehicle and resulting in an accident.

Advice on driving in harsh environments

WARNING

When the vehicle is temporarily parked on snowy roads, if the engine is running and there is snow all around the vehicle, please turn off the engine or drive the vehicle to a ventilated place. Otherwise, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle, causing serious personal injury or even death from carbon monoxide poisoning.

2

Driving

Advice on driving during break-in period

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Transmission (9AT)

To optimise gearshift comfort and extend the transmission's lifespan, new, overhauled, or recently serviced transmissions with fluid replacement must undergo a break-in period. During the first 300 km (186 miles) of driving, the load should be gradually increased starting from no load. Please observe the precautions listed below:

- › It is recommended to drive smoothly with light to moderate throttle to avoid rapid acceleration or deceleration.
- › Avoid emergency braking, especially emergency braking at high speed and while running on slope.
- › When waiting at traffic lights or during temporary parking, it is recommended to shift to the P gear position and allow the transmission to perform self-learning.

⚠ CAUTION

- › During the break-in period, there may be a slight rush when shifting gears. This is normal. This phenomenon disappears after a full break-in period for the transmission.
- › During the break-in period, there may be a slight noise and rush when shifting gears. This is normal. This phenomenon disappears after a full break-in period for the transmission.

Tyres

Take extra care in the first 500 km (311 miles) when driving with a set of new tyres.

New tyres do not offer optimal grip until they have been break-in.

Brake pad

The new brake pad hardly achieves optimal braking effect within first 400 km (249 miles) vehicle running.

The new brake pad must first undergo a break-in period to achieve optimal friction. If you feel that the braking force of the vehicle is insufficient, you can depress the brake pedal harder to increase the braking force.

During the run-in period, avoid applying extra load on the brake. For example, emergency braking, especially emergency braking at high speed and while running on slope.

Advice on driving during break-in period

CAUTION

- › The brake pad and the brake disc may wear to different degrees depending on the using condition and the driving method.
- › Due to the vehicle speed, braking force and environmental conditions (such as temperature and humidity), there may be noise when braking, which is normal.

Power supply switch

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Power supply mode switching

When carrying a smart key, directly press the power supply switch to change the power supply mode.



E2DF788E1EE1

| Mode | Effect |
|------|---|
| OFF | Electrical components are in the non-working state. |
| ON | All electrical components can be used. |

When the smart key is in the vehicle, if the following conditions are met, press the power supply switch to start the vehicle.

- › MT vehicle: the clutch pedal is depressed.
- AT vehicle: the brake pedal is depressed.
- › MT vehicle: the shift lever is in N gear position.
- AT vehicle: the shift lever is in P gear position.

⚠ WARNING

Do not switch the power supply to OFF mode while driving.

⚠ CAUTION

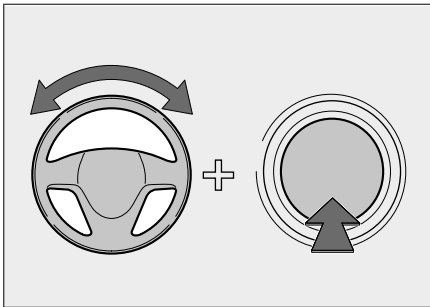
- › Do not put the smart key on the instrument panel or the floor, or in the storage box. Otherwise, the power supply mode cannot be switched.
- › When the engine is not running, do not keep the power supply in ON mode for an extended period of time to prevent a drained battery.
- › When you leave the vehicle, set the power supply to OFF mode and carry the key with you.

Steering wheel unlock

Under normal circumstances

Under normal circumstances, press the power supply switch, and set the power supply to ON to unlock the steering wheel synchronously.

Failing to unlock the steering wheel



935A6ED07079

If the instrument cluster indicates that ESCL unlock has failed when the power supply mode is changed or the vehicle is started, gently turn the steering wheel to the right and left and press the power supply switch as well to unlock it.

Starting and shutting down the vehicle

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Starting the vehicle

Normal starting

1. Carry a smart key, and sit in the driver seat.
2. Adjust the seat position, take a correct driving posture, and confirm the position of each pedal.
3. Confirm that the parking brake is applied.
4. MT vehicle: confirm the shift lever is in N gear position, and depress the clutch pedal.
AT vehicle: confirm the shift lever is in P gear position, and depress the brake pedal.
5. Press the power supply switch to start the vehicle.

Remote starting

Press the start button on the key to start the vehicle. Please refer to "key button introduction" for details.(▷ Page 26)

Emergency starting

MT model





F51AA3956C5E

AT model



475A8DCFEEDB

When the vehicle prompts that **【Check whether the key is in the vehicle】**, the vehicle may not be started due to the power loss of the smart key. At this time, put the key above the marking  in the front armrest box and try to start the vehicle. If it still cannot be started, please contact the authorised service centre immediately.


When the smart key is lost, put the straight mechanical key above the marking  in the front armrest box, and try to start the vehicle. If it still cannot be started, please contact the authorised service centre immediately.

Starting and shutting down the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

- › Be sure to sit in the driver seat before starting the vehicle. Failure to do so may lead to accident, serious injuries or even death.
- › Do not depress the accelerator pedal under any circumstances when starting the vehicle.
- › Always start the vehicle even if you need to move the vehicle slightly. Otherwise, an accident may occur.

i NOTICE

- › For diesel vehicles, when the ambient temperature is low, the engine needs to warm up for a period of time. In this case, switch the power supply to ON mode first, and then perform the engine start operation when the engine warm-up indicator light (yellow)  on the instrument panel goes out.
- › Do not allow the cold engine to run at a high speed or a high load.
- › Try to avoid the engine idling for a long time.
- › If the engine has starting problems or stops frequently, contact the authorised service centre for assistance immediately.

Shutting down the vehicle

Normally shutting down the vehicle

1. MT vehicle: after the vehicle has completely stopped, switch the shift lever to the N gear position.
AT vehicle: after the vehicle has completely stopped, switch the shift lever to the P gear position.
2. Press the power supply switch to shut down the vehicle.

Shutting down the vehicle in an emergency

During driving, in the case of an emergency, for example, failure to stop in a normal way, you can shut down the vehicle through any of the following operations:

- › Press and hold the power supply switch.
- › Press the power supply switch three times in a row within 2 s.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not touch high-temperature components such as the engine, the exhaust pipe, and the radiator immediately after shutting down the engine. Otherwise, you may be burned.
- › Shutting down the engine while driving may cause a collision or major personal injury.

Starting and shutting down the vehicle

- › Do not forcibly shut down the engine while driving in non-emergency situations.

When the engine is forcibly shut down, the brake and steering wheel power assist will be lost, making it harder to depress the brake pedal and turn the steering wheel. Therefore, before shutting down the engine, please slow down as far as possible.

i NOTICE

After the engine is running at a high speed or high load for a long time, it is recommended to let the engine idle for a short time or drive at a low speed for a certain distance before shutting down the engine.

Parking brake

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

⚠ WARNING

- › Parking on a slope steeper than the prescribed limit may cause an accident. Please drive safely and avoid risky parking situations.
- › If the slope is too steep, use of the parking brake system will not be able to stop your vehicle completely. In this case, step on the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Manual parking brake

Applying the electronic parking brake

When the vehicle is parked, apply parking brake by pulling up the parking brake handle completely.

Before applying parking brake, please keep stepping on the brake pedal.



DA31DCDEAA26

The parking brake indicator light (red Ⓢ) on the instrument panel turns on after the parking brake is applied.

⚠ WARNING

When parking, pulling up the parking brake handle completely is necessary, otherwise car slipping may occur, even causing an accident.

Releasing the electronic parking brake

1. Pull up the parking brake slightly and push the button.
2. Release parking brake handle fully.



DA7A08D146B3

The parking brake indicator light (red Ⓢ) on the instrument panel turns off after the parking brake is released.

Parking brake

⚠ WARNING

Releasing the parking brake before starting the vehicle, please keep stepping on the parking brake, otherwise car slipping may occurs, even causing an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Release the parking brake completely before driving, otherwise it will cause overheat of the brake components, which will affect the braking performance and aggravate the brake wear.

Electronic parking brake

Applying the electronic parking brake



DD297DEE618E

- › When the vehicle is parked completely and the engine is shut down, the electronic parking brake (EPB) will be applied automatically.

If you do not need to apply the parking brake, press and hold the EPB switch and then turn off the engine.

- › When the vehicle is stationary, pull up the EPB switch to apply the parking brake.

i NOTICE

The parking brake indicator light (red Ⓢ) on the instrument panel turns on after the parking brake is applied.

Emergency braking

In case of an emergency, pull up the EPB switch and hold it to brake the vehicle urgently.

Release the EPB switch or depress the accelerator pedal to cancel the emergency braking.

⚠ WARNING

The emergency braking function can only be used in case of an emergency (e.g. the brake pedal is blocked).

Releasing the electronic parking brake



F2A25B34DC35

Parking brake

When the power supply is in the ON mode, step on the brake pedal and press the EPB switch to release the parking brake.

i NOTICE

- › The parking brake indicator light (red) (Ⓢ) on the instrument panel turns OFF after the parking brake is released.
- › When the vehicle is powered off and powered on again, and the parking brake fault warning light (yellow) (Ⓢ) on the instrument panel turns on, please try the following options.
Pull up the EPB switch first, then depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch to release the EPB normally. If the warning light remains on, contact the authorised service centre.

Auto vehicle hold (AVH)

This function can automatically brake the vehicle with the vehicle fully stopped, when the vehicle is on a slope, waiting at red traffic lights or halting from time to time. You don't need to depress the brake pedal for a long time or frequently apply the parking brake. It allows the driver to drive more comfortably and reduces the risk of rolling.



After closing the driver door, fastening the driver seat belt, and starting the vehicle, press the auto vehicle hold (AVH) switch to activate or deactivate the auto vehicle hold (AVH) function.

1. Activate the AVH function.

At this point, this function is ready, and the AVH standby indicator light (yellow) (Ⓢ) on the instrument panel turns on.

2. This function will automatically brake the vehicle with the brake pedal depressed during driving.

At this point, this function is in operation, and the AVH working indicator light (green) (Ⓢ) on the instrument panel turns on.

3. Depress the accelerator pedal, and the parking brake automatically release.

If the vehicle is not started for a long time, it will automatically switch to EPB to apply braking force. At this time, the AVH function turns to the ready state.



Parking brake

NOTICE

The following conditions will deactivate the AVH function forcedly:

- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › The driver door is opened.
- › The engine is shut down.
- › It works for more than 3 minutes.

CAUTION

In case of automatic vehicle washing, towing, etc., deactivate the AVH function.

Automatic drive-off function

When the driver fastens the seat belt, starts the vehicle, engages a gear position and depresses the accelerator pedal, the parking brake will be automatically released after the system detects the driver's intention to leave.

To avoid vehicle rolling on the slope, depress the accelerator pedal at a proper time to increase power output for vehicle starting off.



Gear shifting (MT)

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction to gear positions



0E1C39CC99E6

This transmission has a reverse (R) gear position, a neutral (N) gear position, and six drive (D) gear positions (1st to 6th gear positions).

Reverse (R) gear position

The R gear position is used for reversing.

Neutral (N) gear position

The N gear position is a non-powered gear position, and the transmission is in a state of not transmitting power when this gear position is engaged.

⚠ WARNING

- › When stopping the vehicle temporarily in the N gear position, be sure to apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.
- › Vehicles are prohibited from coasting with the N gear position engaged; otherwise, there is a risk of accidents.

Gear shifting method

Shifting to D gear position

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Switch the shift lever to a proper gear position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

Shifting to R gear position

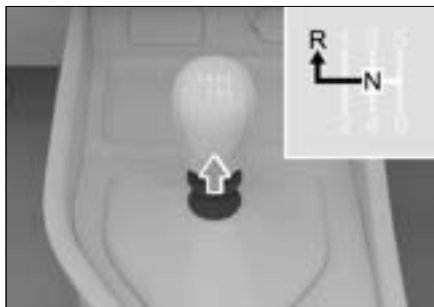
⚠ WARNING

In order to avoid the damage to the vehicle or accidents, the vehicle must be completely stopped before the R gear is engaged.

1. Make sure that the vehicle is stationary.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Gear shifting (MT)

3. Lift the unlock device and switch the shift lever to R gear position.



C553EC65E252

4. Release the clutch pedal.

⚠ CAUTION

- › When driving, do not keep your feet on the clutch pedal, because this will cause unnecessary wear or damage to the clutch.
- › When driving, do not put your hand on the lever all the time to avoid wearing premature wear of the transmission shift fork, the synchronizer subassembly and the control structure.
- › When shifting into R gear position, instead of quickly engaging it after depressing the clutch pedal, it is advisable to depress the clutch pedal and wait for 3 seconds before shifting into R gear position. This will make the gear shifting operation smoother.

- › While reversing, it is prohibited to switch the shift lever directly from the reverse R gear position to D gear position. Stop the vehicle completely first before shifting to D gear position.

Starting off and stopping

Starting off in general

1. Fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. When the speed of engine is stable, fully depress the clutch pedal and shift to the 1st gear position.
4. Release the parking brake (hand brake).
5. Gently step on the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle while releasing the clutch pedal.

Hill-start

1. Fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Fully depress the clutch pedal and switch the shift lever to the 1st gear position.
4. Gently depress the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal.
5. When the vehicle shows signs of moving forward, release the parking brake and start off.

i NOTICE

When driving off-road, moving at low speeds, carrying cargo, or towing, it is recommended to start off in the 1st gear position.

Stopping the vehicle

1. Depress the brake pedal when you fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. After the vehicle has completely stopped, switch the shift lever to the N gear position.
3. The parking brake is applied.
4. The vehicle is shut down.

i NOTICE

When parking on a slope, operate the shift lever according to the following situations after shutting down the vehicle:

- › If the vehicle is facing uphill, the shift lever should be shifted to the 1st gear position. If necessary, block the wheels.
- › If the vehicle is facing downhill, the shift lever should be shifted to the R gear position. If necessary, block the wheels.

Gear shifting (AT)

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Introduction to gear positions

Park (P) gear position

The P gear position is used to assist in parking the vehicle. When the P gear position is engaged, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Reverse (R) gear position

The R gear position is used for reversing.

Neutral (N) gear position

The N gear position is an unpowered gear position, and the transmission system is in a state of not transmitting power when this gear position is engaged.

WARNING

- › When stopping the vehicle temporarily in the N gear position, be sure to apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.
- › Vehicles are prohibited from coasting with the N gear position engaged; otherwise, there is a risk of accidents.

Automatic mode (D)

The D gear position is recommended for normal driving.

When the D gear position is engaged, the transmission can automatically adjust to the appropriate gear position based on the vehicle speed and the required acceleration, to achieve the best economy.

Manual mode (M)

The M gear position is recommended for speeding up and overtaking or driving uphill and downhill.

Lower gear positions of M gear position are recommended for bumpy road, ramp and the like.

Gear shifting (AT)

Gear shifting

After starting the vehicle, you can perform normal gear shifting operations. Before starting the vehicle, you should always step on the brake pedal. Otherwise, the vehicle will move by itself after releasing the parking brake in D, R or M gear position.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid the damage to the vehicle or accidents, the vehicle must be completely stopped before the gear position is shifted.

i NOTICE

After the gear shifting operation is completed, please confirm that the correct gear position is engaged according to the instrument panel prompt.



- Ⓐ Unlock button
- Ⓑ Parking gear button (P gear position)

Shifting to the P gear position

When the vehicle is stationary, press the P gear position button.

i NOTICE

Under the following conditions, the vehicle will automatically switch to the P gear position.

- › The vehicle is stationary and the power supply mode is switched to OFF.
- › The vehicle is stationary, and the driver seat belt is not worn, and the driver door is opened.

Shifting to the D, R, N or M gear position



Move the shift lever forwards or backwards by 1 or 2 position(s) to shift between different gears, and it will automatically return to its position after releasing the shift lever. The corresponding gear position will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Gear shifting (AT)

- › To shift out of the P gear position, depress the brake pedal and press the unlock button, and then move the shift lever.
- › To shift from P gear position to D gear position (R gear position), depress the brake pedal and press the unlock button, and then move the shift lever backwards (forwards) by 2 positions.
- › To shift from D gear position (or R gear position) to N gear position, directly move the shift lever forwards (or backwards) by 1 position.
- › To shift from D gear position to M gear position, move the shift lever backwards. Move it backwards again to return to D gear position.

Paddle shifter



4A928FBC7AED

Ⓐ Downshift paddle

Ⓑ Upshift paddle

When driving in the M gear position, move the paddle shifter to upshift or downshift manually.

When driving in the D gear position, move the paddle shifter to temporarily activate the M gear position. In this case, you can upshift or downshift manually by pushing the paddle shifter.

When driving in the M gear position temporarily, lift and hold the upshift paddle or do not operate the paddle shifter for a long time, and the M gear position will be returned to the D gear position.

i NOTICE

When the vehicle is in the M gear position, if the engine speed is too low, the transmission will automatically downshift; the transmission will not automatically upshift if the engine speed is too high. Please manually shift the gear position in time.

Unlocking P gear position in an emergency

If the transmission cannot be switched from the P gear position to other gear positions by normal operation of the lever, you can unlock the P gear position in an emergency.

⚠ CAUTION

- › In case of this breakdown, contact the authorised service centre and such breakdown should be solved by the professionals. Unauthorized operations may damage vehicle components.

Gear shifting (AT)

2

Driving

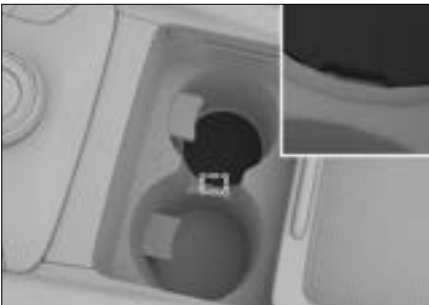
› When the emergency unlocking is required, it indicates that the vehicle has problems, go to the authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

1. Apply the parking brake, switch the power supply to ON mode and open the front armrest box.
2. Take out the cup holder mat.



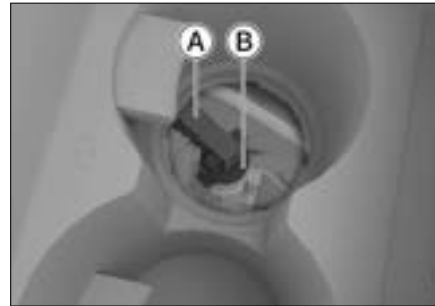
DC6AF5663C47

3. At the notch in the cover plate, use a flat-head screwdriver wrapped with cloth to pry open the cover plate, and you can see the P gear position unlocking handle.



8F4F00A775BC

4. Switch the P gear position unlocking handle counterclockwise about 60 degrees to make it enter into the slide slot.



C3D71DEC842

Ⓐ Cable

Ⓑ P gear position unlocking handle

5. 8AT models: pull up the cable to raise the unlocking handle to the top, and turn the P gear unlocking cable handle clockwise. A slight "crack" will indicate that the handle is fixed. The gear position will be switched to N gear at this time. Now, the instrument panel will indicate that the transmission is in the N gear position.

9AT models: pull up the cable to raise the unlocking handle to the top and hold it for about 18 seconds. When the instrument panel shows the N gear position or the N gear position indicator light of the shift lever turns on, it indicates that the P gear position is successfully unlocked. Now, the transmission is in the N gear position. Release the cable.

Gear shifting (AT)

- When the vehicle is moved, apply the parking brake, and reset the P gear position unlocking handle according to the opposite operation procedure as described above.

Crawling function

Once the vehicle has started, shift to the D gear position, and release the parking brake and the brake pedal. When the resistance to the vehicle is low, there is no need to depress the accelerator pedal at this point and the vehicle can crawl slowly.

Starting off and stopping

Starting off the vehicle

- Fasten the seat belt and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.
- Start the vehicle.
- After the engine speed is stable, depress the brake pedal and shift to the D gear position.

If you need more traction when starting off (such as starting on a slope, etc.), shift to the M gear position.

- Release the brake pedal and then gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

i NOTICE

When you start off the vehicle, the auto departure function will automatically release the parking brake.

Stopping the vehicle

- After releasing the accelerator pedal, depress the brake pedal.
- After the vehicle is stopped steadily, shift to the P gear position.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is shut down.

i NOTICE

For a model equipped with EPB, the parking brake will automatically apply when the vehicle is turned off.

! CAUTION

- When temporarily stopping on a slope, you must depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake. Do not rely on the accelerator pedal or crawling function to keep the vehicle stable, as this can damage the transmission.
- Do not park on the slope only by engaging the P gear position. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged.
- When stopping the vehicle on a slope, wedge the wheels if necessary to prevent rolling.
- When the vehicle is not completely stopped, do not shift to the P gear position, as this will damage the transmission.

Steering wheel assist modes

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Steering wheel assist modes

Separate switching: when the power supply is in ON mode, you can switch the steering wheel assist mode through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Driving control】** → **【Steering wheel assist mode】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Linkage switching: when switching the driving mode, the steering wheel assist mode will also be switched by linkage.

i NOTICE

For switching between power steering modes, the following conditions need to be met:

- › The electric power steering system is functioning correctly.
- › The vehicle speed is below 125 km/h (78 mph).

- › No apparent steering operation is carried out.

Light

It increases steering power for easy steering. It is suitable for traffic congestion driving environment such as urban areas.

Comfort

It is suitable for general driving habits.

Sport

It reduces steering power and increases steering wheel feedback. It is recommended to use it under high speed, rain and snow and other cases.

Driving modes

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving mode (intelligent electronic control 4WD)

Mode introduction

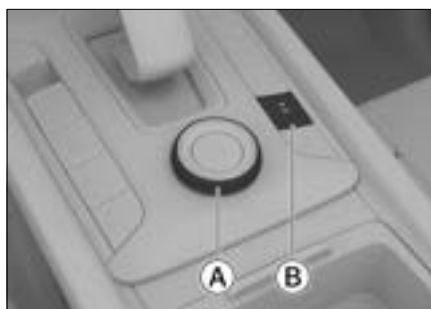
Normal mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads or hard roads covered by a little ice. It can provide you with an optimized and balanced driving experience on good roads.

ECO mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads and other good roads. Priority is given to fuel economy to reduce fuel consumption while the driving experience is maintained.

Sport mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, cement roads and other good roads. By increasing the idle speed and delaying the upshift, the system outputs strong power during starting off and accelerating.

4L mode: this mode is suitable for large slope climbing, vehicle rescue and other road conditions. By increasing the primary reduction ratio, the vehicle is given the maximum traction, providing effective power support for going over steep slopes and for the vehicle rescue.

Switching method



9F2E2FE4CBA5

- Ⓐ Driving mode knob
- Ⓑ Four-wheel drive low-speed mode button (4L)

When the power supply is set to ON mode, and the vehicle is not in 4L mode, turn the knob to switch between ECO, normal, sport and 4H modes.

Start the vehicle, and when the vehicle is in the N gear position and stationary, press 4L button to enter or exit 4L mode. If the indicator light on the button turns on, it indicates that 4L mode has been entered. Otherwise, it indicates that 4L mode has been exited.

i NOTICE

- › After mode switching is completed, there will be relevant prompts on the instrument panel.
- › When the vehicle is in 4L mode, exit 4L mode before switching between modes. Otherwise, the driving mode cannot be switched.
- › If the mode switching is abnormal and relevant warning information appears on the instrument panel, please follow the instructions. After confirming that the switching condition is satisfied, try to switch between modes again.
- › When exiting 4L mode, it will automatically switch to the last used driving mode.
- › When switching to 4L mode, it is normal that there may be a mechanical collision sound and a slight dash of the vehicle.
- › Straightening the wheels can switch to the 4L mode smoother.
- › In the 4L mode, the cruise control system will be disabled and the electronic stabilization program is deactivated by default.

A CAUTION

- › When driving in 4L mode, keep the vehicle speed below 40 km/h (25 mph) and avoid sharp turns to prevent damage to the vehicle parts and trigger an alarm.

- › Driving is prohibited, and the gear position must remain in N gear position until the 4L mode is successfully entered and exited; otherwise, the transfer case may be damaged.
- › Do not expose the vehicle to abnormal use scenarios such as push-and-pull or overspeed racing (where the engine speed is out of control and rises sharply, exceeding the maximum allowable speed and reaching dangerous levels) for extended periods. Failure to do so may cause damage to related components and affect the vehicle's service life.
- › Never perform 2WD hub tests in any driving mode (including operations where the front wheels do not rotate while the rear wheels continuously slip on a roller test track or an icy/snowy road surface).
- › When the vehicle is attempting to extricate itself from a difficult situation (such as snow, mud, sand, or other conditions causing wheel slip), the 4WD system thermal protection function may be triggered due to continuous wheel slip. In this case, immediately cease attempts to extricate the vehicle and, under safe conditions, park it to allow for cooling. Wait for the 4WD system to automatically deactivate the overheat warning before continuing with the extrication process.

Driving modes

After the overheat warning has been deactivated, it is recommended to wait for a few additional minutes to allow the 4WD system to cool more thoroughly and for its performance to recover better. If the warning is not deactivated for a long time, contact the authorised service centre.

- › Ensure that the rolling radius of the four wheel tyres of the vehicle is consistent.

If tyres need to be replaced, ensure that all four tyres used on the vehicle after the replacement are of the same brand and type.

If tyre consistency cannot be guaranteed temporarily (including replacement of non-full-size spare tyres), the ECO mode must be used, and the driving mileage does not exceed 50 km (31 mph). Please replace the tyres as soon as possible and ensure that the brand and model of the four tyres are the same.

If a tyre pressure warning appears, promptly confirm it and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure to cancel the warning.

- › Avoid operation in drifting conditions.
- › Do not use 4L mode on paved roads or streets (such as normal highways and cement ground).

- › Do not start the engine or turn the tyres when lifting a vehicle in 4L mode with a jack.

Otherwise, the vehicle may slip off the jack and lurch forward, which is extremely dangerous.

Driving mode memory function

You can activate or deactivate the driving mode memory function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Driving control】** → **【Driving mode memory】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After this switch is activated, the driving mode defaults to the last used mode when the vehicle is started again.

After this switch is turned off, the driving mode defaults to the standard mode when the vehicle is started again. However, if the 4L mode was the last mode used, the vehicle will start in 4L mode instead of standard mode.

Driving mode (electronic control part-time 4WD)

Mode introduction

2H mode: it is suitable for paved roads or unpaved roads with good adhesion.

4H mode: it is suitable for unpaved roads with poor adhesion (such as snowy, muddy or sandy roads).

4L mode: this mode is suitable for large slope climbing, vehicle rescue and other road conditions.

Mode switching



DD2B77C4E077

Switching between 2H and 4H: after the power supply is set to ON mode or the vehicle is started, turn the knob while the vehicle is stationary or travelling in a straight line below 80 km/h (50 mph).

Entering and exiting 4L mode: start the vehicle, shift to the N gear position and keep it stationary, and turn the knob. If the instrument panel shows 4L mode, it indicates that 4L mode has been entered; if the instrument panel shows other modes, it indicates that 4L mode has been exited.

i NOTICE

- › After mode switching is completed, there will be relevant prompts on the instrument panel.

- › If switching between driving modes is abnormal, or relevant warning prompts appear on the instrument panel, follow the warning prompts on the instrument panel to operate. After confirming that the switching condition is satisfied, try to switch between modes again.
- › When switching between driving modes, it is normal that there may be a mechanical collision sound and a slight dash of the vehicle.
- › If the steering wheel is not in the centre position, you will feel an increase in resistance when switching between 4H and 4L modes, which is normal.
- › In 4H and 4L modes, the cruise control system will be prohibited, and the electronic stability control (ESC) will be deactivated by default.
- › On unpaved roads such as snowy, muddy and sandy roads, it is recommended to use 4H mode.

! CAUTION

- › Driving is prohibited, and the gear position must remain in N gear position until the 4L mode is successfully entered and exited; otherwise, the transfer case may be damaged.

Driving modes

- › While driving in 4H mode, keep the vehicle speed below 80 km/h (50 mph); otherwise, an alarm will occur and the vehicle parts may be damaged.
- › When driving in 4L mode, keep the vehicle speed below 40 km/h (25 mph) and avoid sharp turns to prevent damage to the vehicle parts and trigger an alarm.
- › When driving on normal roads or motorways, never use 4H or 4L mode. Otherwise, there will be noise, serious tyre wear, increased fuel consumption, damage to the drive system and other issues.
- › When the rear wheels of the vehicle slid on a snowy and icy road, it is forbidden to change the driving mode.
- › Do not expose the vehicle to abnormal use scenarios such as push-and-pull or overspeed racing (where the engine speed is out of control and rises sharply, exceeding the maximum allowable speed and reaching dangerous levels) for extended periods. Failure to do so may cause damage to related components and affect the vehicle's service life.
- › It is prohibited to conduct 2WD hub tests in the 4H and 4L modes (including operations where the front wheels do not rotate while the rear wheels continuously slip on a roller test track or an icy/snowy road surface).
- › Ensure that the rolling radius of the four wheel tyres of the vehicle is consistent.

If tyres need to be replaced, ensure that all four tyres used on the vehicle after the replacement are of the same brand and type.

If tyre consistency cannot be guaranteed temporarily (including replacement of non-full-size spare tyres), the 2H mode must be used, and the driving mileage does not exceed 50 km (31 mph). Please replace the tyres as soon as possible and ensure that the brand and model of the four tyres are the same.

If a tyre pressure warning appears, promptly confirm it and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure to cancel the warning.
- › Avoid operation in drifting conditions.
- › Do not use the 4H and 4L modes on paved roads or streets (such as normal highways and cement ground).
- › Do not start the engine or turn the tyres when lifting the vehicle in 4H or 4L mode with a jack.

Otherwise, the vehicle may slip off the jack and lunge forward, which is extremely dangerous.

Driving mode memory function

You can activate or deactivate the driving mode memory function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Driving control】** → **【Driving mode memory】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After this switch is activated, the driving mode defaults to the last used mode when the vehicle is started again.

After this switch is deactivated, the driving mode defaults to 2H mode when the vehicle is started again. But if you used the 4L mode last time, when you start the vehicle, you will still use the 4L mode instead of the 2H mode.

All-terrain control system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

All-terrain control system

System description

In complex road conditions, depending on the selected driving mode, the system will automatically optimise the vehicle's control systems to suit the terrain, improving steering ability, stability and cross-country capability.

Mode introduction

- › 2H mode: this mode is suitable for motorways, paved roads, asphalt roads, concrete roads or hard road covered by little ice. It can provide you with an optimized and balanced driving experience on good roads.
- › 4H mode: this mode is suitable for loose and slippery road conditions such as desert, rainforest, shallow muddy road and so on; it can optimise the accelerator control to improve the response and torque output.

Never use this mode when driving on a paved road or street.

- › Snow mode: this mode is suitable for light snow, ice, grass, gravel and other slippery roads. The vehicle starts off at the second gear position, and the power output in 4WD mode is smooth. You can enjoy great driving manoeuvrability and stability.

Never use this mode when driving on a paved road or street.

- › Mud mode: this mode is suitable for driving on muddy roads, driving off-road and getting out of trouble. Under this mode, the vehicle can make the best use of all tyres' traction to get strong power and great off-road ability by electronic limited slip.

Never use this mode when driving on a paved road or street.

- › Sand mode: this mode is suitable for dry and soft roads such as Gobi or desert off-road. The response of power output becomes more positive.

Never use this mode when driving on a paved road or street.

- › 4L mode: this mode is suitable for large slope climbing, vehicle rescue and other road conditions. By increasing the primary reduction ratio, the vehicle is given the maximum traction, providing effective power support for going over steep slopes and for the vehicle rescue.

All-terrain control system

Never use this mode when driving on a paved road or street.

⚠ CAUTION

- › If you use the driving modes incorrectly, the vehicle will respond erroneously to road conditions so that the life of the suspension and transmission systems will be reduced.
- › Before the vehicle enters a complex terrain, the driver should judge the terrain in advance and activate the appropriate all-terrain mode to avoid losing control of the vehicle.

Mode switching



7C4EF55EF3D2

With the power supply in the ON mode, turn the knob to switch between 2H, 4H, snow, mud, sand modes.

Entering and exiting 4L mode: start the vehicle, shift to the N gear position and keep it stationary, and turn the knob. If the instrument panel shows 4L mode, it indicates that 4L mode has been entered; if the instrument panel shows other modes, it indicates that 4L mode has been exited.

i NOTICE

- › After mode switching is completed, there will be relevant prompts on the instrument panel.
- › To ensure driving safety, when the vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), mode switching will not be available. If the vehicle speed is below the limit, the system will automatically switch to the requested mode.
- › If the mode switching is abnormal and relevant warning information appears on the instrument panel, please follow the instructions. After confirming that the switching condition is satisfied, try to switch between modes again.
- › In snow mode, mud mode, sand mode, 4L mode and 4H mode, the cruise control system will be prohibited and the electronic stability control will be deactivated.
- › When switching between driving modes, it is normal that there may be a mechanical collision sound and a slight dash of the vehicle.
- › Straightening the wheels can make mode switching smoother.
- › When the rear wheels of the vehicle slid on a snowy and icy road, it is forbidden to change the driving mode.

All-terrain control system

- › When the current rear axle is relatively strong, a mode switching delay may occur (the instrument panel prompts to move the vehicle). In this case, try driving straight less than 5 km/h (3 mph) to facilitate the mode switching process.
- › If the instrument panel gives an alert, and the mode switching fails, restart the vehicle or move the vehicle about 1.5 m back and forth before activating the 4L mode.
When moving vehicles back and forth, it is recommended that the vehicle speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph).
- › For driving in 4L mode, the hill descent control (HDC) system will automatically activate if the gear is shifted to manual mode.

⚠ CAUTION

- › While driving in the 4L mode, the vehicle speed should be less than 40 km/h (25 mph) and avoid sharp turns, or parts of the vehicle may be damaged.
- › Driving is prohibited and the gear must remain in N gear position until 4L mode is successfully entered and exited. Otherwise the transfer case may be damaged.

Driving mode memory function

You can activate or deactivate the driving mode memory function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Driving control】** → **【Driving mode memory】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

After this switch is activated, the driving mode defaults to the last used mode when the vehicle is started again.

After this switch is deactivated, the driving mode defaults to 2H mode when the vehicle is started again. But if you used the 4L mode last time, when you start the vehicle, you will still use the 4L mode instead of the 2H mode.

⚠ CAUTION

Please pay attention to the following when driving under 4WD state (4L mode, 4H mode, snow mode, mud mode, sand mode):

- › Please use the 2H mode when driving on the high adhesion road such as urban roads and motorways. If you are driving under other modes, the vehicle components may be damaged.

All-terrain control system

2

Driving

- › When driving in the 4H, snow mode, or muddy mode, you should keep the vehicle speed less than 80 km/h (50 mph) and avoid sharp turns. Otherwise, the warning may be triggered and the transmission system components may be damaged, even a risk of rollover.
- › Please switch to 2H mode when taking a velocity measurement with a chassis dynamometer. You must ensure that the front wheel and rear wheel are at the same rotation rate, if you do not use the 2H mode. Otherwise, the components of 4WD system will be damaged.
- › Never perform 2WD hub tests in the non-2H mode (including operations where the front wheels do not rotate while the rear wheels continuously slip on a roller test track or an icy/snowy road surface).

- › When the vehicle is attempting to extricate itself from a difficult situation (such as snow, mud, sand, or other conditions causing wheel slip), the 4WD system thermal protection function may be triggered due to continuous wheel slip. In this case, immediately cease attempts to extricate the vehicle and, under safe conditions, park it to allow for cooling. Wait for the 4WD system to automatically deactivate the overheat warning before continuing with the extrication process.

After the overheat warning has been deactivated, it is recommended to wait for a few additional minutes to allow the 4WD system to cool more thoroughly and for its performance to recover better. If the warning is not deactivated for a long time, contact the authorised service centre.

- › Ensure that the rolling radius of the four wheel tyres of the vehicle is consistent.

If tyres need to be replaced, ensure that all four tyres used on the vehicle after the replacement are of the same brand and type.



All-terrain control system

If tyre consistency cannot be guaranteed temporarily (including replacement of non-full-size spare tyres), the 2H mode must be used, and the driving mileage does not exceed 50 km (31 mph). Please replace the tyres as soon as possible and ensure that the brand and model of the four tyres are the same.

If a tyre pressure warning appears, promptly confirm it and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure to cancel the warning.

- › When using a jack to lift a vehicle in snow, mud, sand, 4L, or 4H mode, never start the engine or rotate the tyres.

Otherwise, the vehicle may slip off the jack and lurch forward, which is extremely dangerous.



Off-road expert mode

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Off-road expert mode

Mode introduction


When the driver needs to control the vehicle completely under complex road conditions such as sand, mud road and so on, driver can turn on this mode to increase the operation sense of driving. Under this mode, the electronic stability control system (ESC), including traction control system (TCS), rollover prevention system (RMI), and vehicle dynamic stability control (VDC) will be turned off, but the anti-lock braking system (ABS) will still work.

i NOTICE

- › Be sure to drive carefully within the limits permitted by law.
- › With the off-road expert mode entered, the ESC is turned off so that the vehicle stability cannot be supported by ESC. Please drive carefully.

- › This mode is recommended for those with off-road driving experience.


Instructions

After starting the vehicle, with the electronic stability control system (ESC) activated, press and hold the ESC off button  for 3 to 10 seconds. If the instrument panel displays the **【Cross-country expert mode】**, it indicates that the off-road expert mode has been entered. Press this button again to exit this mode.



F46F045B5B6B

i NOTICE

- › If you press and hold the ESC off button  for more than 10 seconds, the vehicle will not be able to enter cross-country expert mode, and you will need to restart the vehicle for operation again.
- › With the off-road expert mode entered, the vehicle will exit this mode automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds 180 km/h (112 mph).

4WD system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

4WD system (electronic control part-time 4WD)

Mode introduction

2H mode: it is suitable for paved roads or unpaved roads with good adhesion.

4H mode: it is suitable for unpaved roads with poor adhesion (such as snowy, muddy or sandy roads).

4L mode: this mode is suitable for large slope climbing, vehicle rescue and other road conditions.

Mode switching



277E22E317D7

Turn the knob to align the indicator light with a specific mode. When the instrument panel displays this mode, it indicates that the drive mode switching has been completed.

- › Switching between 2H and 4H: after the power supply is set to ON mode or the vehicle is started, turn the knob while the vehicle is stationary or travelling in a straight line below 80 km/h (50 mph).
- › How to enter 4L mode: after the vehicle is started and stationary, depress the clutch pedal and shift to N gear position, and then turn the knob to align the indicator light with 4L.

How to exit 4L mode: after the vehicle is started and stationary, depress the clutch pedal and shift to N gear position, and then turn the knob to align the indicator light with 2H or 4H.

i NOTICE

- › After mode switching is completed, there will be relevant prompts on the instrument panel.
- › If switching between the drive modes is abnormal and relevant warning messages appear on the instrument panel, follow the warning messages on the instrument panel to operate. After confirming that the switching condition is satisfied, try to switch the mode again.

4WD system

2

Driving

- › When switching between the drive modes, it is normal that there may be a mechanical collision sound and a slight dash of the vehicle.
- › If the steering wheel is not in the centre position, you will feel an increase in resistance when switching between 4H and 4L modes, which is normal.
- › In 4H mode and 4L mode, do not use the cruise control function, and the electronic stability control system will be deactivated by default.
- › On unpaved roads such as snowy, muddy and sandy roads, it is recommended to use 4H mode.

CAUTION

- › Driving is prohibited, and the gear position must remain in N gear position until the 4L mode is successfully entered and exited; otherwise, the transfer case may be damaged.
- › While driving in 4H mode, keep the vehicle speed below 80 km/h (50 mph); otherwise, an alarm will occur and the vehicle parts may be damaged.
- › When driving in 4L mode, keep the vehicle speed below 40 km/h (25 mph) and avoid sharp turns to prevent damage to the vehicle parts and trigger an alarm.

- › When driving on normal roads or motorways, never use 4H or 4L mode. Otherwise, there will be noise, serious tyre wear, increased fuel consumption, damage to the drive system and other issues.
- › When the rear wheels of the vehicle skid on a snowy and icy road, never switch between the drive modes.
- › Do not expose the vehicle to abnormal use scenarios such as push-and-pull or overspeed racing (where the engine speed is out of control and rises sharply, exceeding the maximum allowable speed and reaching dangerous levels) for extended periods. Failure to do so may cause damage to related components and affect the vehicle's service life.
- › It is prohibited to conduct 2WD hub tests in the 4H and 4L modes (including operations where the front wheels do not rotate while the rear wheels continuously slip on a roller test track or an icy/snowy road surface).
- › Ensure that the rolling radius of the four wheel tyres of the vehicle is consistent.
If tyres need to be replaced, ensure that all four tyres used on the vehicle after the replacement are of the same brand and type.



4WD system

If tyre consistency cannot be guaranteed temporarily (including replacement of non-full-size spare tyres), the 2H mode must be used, and the driving mileage does not exceed 50 km (31 mph). Please replace the tyres as soon as possible and ensure that the brand and model of the four tyres are the same.

If a tyre pressure warning appears, promptly confirm it and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure to cancel the warning.

- › Avoid operation in drifting conditions.
- › Do not use the 4H and 4L modes on paved roads or streets (such as normal highways and cement ground).
- › Do not start the engine or turn the tyres when lifting the vehicle in 4H or 4L mode with a jack.

Otherwise, the vehicle may slip off the jack and lunge forward, which is extremely dangerous.



Differential lock switch

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Differential lock introduction

When a drive wheel slips, the differential lock will ensure that the other drive wheel is still able to get enough torque to provide an enough driving force for the vehicle to get out of trouble.

i NOTICE

- › Please try to avoid using the locking function of the differential lock within the first 50 km (31 mph) of driving a new vehicle.
- › If the vehicle stops for more than 1 month, it is recommended to use the locking function of the differential lock after driving 50 km (31 mph).
- › The differential lock is only used for the vehicle to get out of trouble, which should be deactivated immediately after it is out of trouble.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use differential locks when the vehicle is overloaded.
- › Do not modify the powertrain assembly and transmission system of the vehicle to avoid damage to the differential lock.
- › Do not use the differential lock on a paved road.

⚠ WARNING

After locking the differential lock, drive the vehicle carefully and avoid making sharp turns. Otherwise, vehicle stability may be compromised, increasing the risk of accidents.

Rear axle differential lock

Manual locking and unlocking

MT model




3285A8E63859


Differential lock switch


AT model




COD380F2D3BC

Start the vehicle and press the rear axle differential lock button  to lock or unlock the rear axle differential lock.

If the indicator light on the button and the rear axle differential lock indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turn on, it indicates that the rear axle differential lock is locked.

If the indicator light on the button and the rear axle differential lock indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turn off, it indicates that the rear axle differential lock is unlocked.

NOTICE

When locking the differential lock, if the indicator light on the button and the rear axle differential lock fault warning light (yellow)  on the instrument panel flash and turn off, it indicates that the locking conditions are not met. The differential lock can be locked normally only when the following basic conditions are met:

- › The vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

- › The left and right wheel speed difference is less than 50 rpm.
- › The steering assist is not activated.

NOTICE


When unlocking the differential lock, if there is difficulty unlocking, you can lightly turn the steering wheel to the left and right to assist in unlocking.

CAUTION

When the differential lock is locked, avoid making sharp turns to prevent damage to vehicle components.

Speed warning

Driving in differential lock mode, if the vehicle speed increases to 30 to 40 km/h (19 to 25 mph), the system will sound the following warning:


- › The indicator light on the rear axle differential lock button flashes.
- › The rear axle differential lock indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel flashes.

When the above phenomena occur, please reduce the speed.

Automatic unlocking upon over-speed

Driving in differential lock mode, if the speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph), the rear axle differential lock will automatically unlock.

Differential lock switch


After unlocking, the indicator light on the rear differential lock button and the rear axle differential lock indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel are all off.


Front axle differential lock


Manual locking and unlocking




D33A9701C68C

Start the vehicle and press the front axle differential lock button  to lock or unlock the front axle differential lock.

If the indicator light on the button and the front axle differential lock indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turn on, it indicates that the front axle differential lock is successfully locked.

If the indicator light on the button and the front axle differential lock indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turn off, it indicates that the front axle differential lock is unlocked.

i NOTICE

When locking the differential lock, if the indicator light on the button flashes and turns off, and the front axle differential lock fault warning light (yellow)  on the instrument panel flashes and turns off, it indicates that the locking conditions are not met. It can be locked normally only when the following basic conditions are met:

- › The vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).
- › The rear axle differential lock is locked.
- › The driving mode is in 4L mode.
- › The left and right wheel speed difference is less than 50 rpm.

i NOTICE

- › When the rear axle differential lock is unlocked, the front axle differential lock will also simultaneously unlock.
- › After the 4L driving mode is exited, the front axle differential lock will automatically unlock.
- › When unlocking the differential lock, if there is difficulty unlocking, you can lightly turn the steering wheel to the left and right to assist in unlocking.




Differential lock switch

CAUTION

When the differential lock is locked, avoid making sharp turns to prevent damage to vehicle components.

Speed warning


Driving in differential lock mode, vehicle speed increases to 30 to 40 km/h (19 to 25 mph), the system will sound the following warning:

- › The indicator light on the front differential lock button flashes.
- › The front axle differential lock indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel flashes.

When the above phenomena occur, please reduce the speed.

Automatic unlocking upon over-speed

Driving in differential lock mode, if the speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph), the front axle differential lock will automatically unlock.

After unlocking, the indicator light on the front differential lock button and the front axle differential lock indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel are all off.



Parking assist system

2

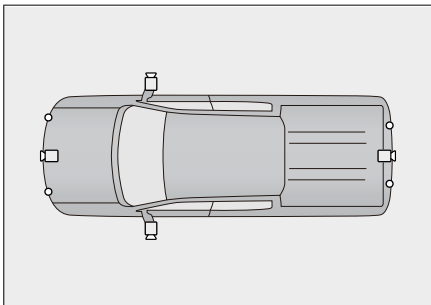
Driving

Vehicle equipment



Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Parking assist system sensor

The parking assist system detects the traffic situations around the vehicle using cameras and radar sensors, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to improve safety and comfort when parking.



0073E65E0428

| Illustration | Description | Position |
|---|-------------------|---|
|  | Camera | On the front grille; On the tailgate; On the left and right side mirrors. |
|  | Ultrasonic radars | On the front and rear bumpers |

i NOTICE

Sensor types and quantities may vary based on vehicle configurations. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

⚠ WARNING

› The parking assist system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at any time during parking or similar operations.

Parking assist system

- › There are blind spots to the coverage of the parking assist system, and obstacles in certain areas may not be detected. Therefore, during parking or similar operations, please make sure that there are no children or animals near the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- › When reversing the vehicle, make sure that the tailgate has been fully closed.
- › Do not knock on the camera and the radar.
- › Do not flush the camera and the radar with a high-pressure water gun in the front. Otherwise, water may result in system failure or fire.
- › Do not use rough or sharp material to clean the camera and the radar. Please wipe with a soft cloth or wash with water (low water pressure) to clean the surface of the camera and the radar.

i NOTICE

When the parking system is working, affected by the characteristics of ultrasonic radar, the following situations may cause the parking system to be less effective in recognizing or not recognizing obstacles, resulting in damage to the vehicle, including but not limited to:

- › Objects that are in the blind spot of radar detection, such as short objects, objects under bumpers, objects that are too close or too far from the vehicle.
- › Hanging objects that cannot be detected, e.g. fire boxes, vehicle spare tyre, rear of trucks.
- › There are ultrasonic noises with the same frequency around, For example: metal noise, high-pressure gas emission noise, or a vehicle horn directed at the radar.
- › The obstacle is a wire net, fence, thin post, rope, shopping cart, two-wheeled vehicle, or other thin object that cannot reflect effective sound waves.
- › The obstacle is snow, cotton or other substances of which the surface can easily absorb sound waves.
- › The obstacle is an object whose surface does not reflect the detection signal or a person wearing such clothing.
- › The obstacle is a cone-shaped object or an object with an inclined surface.
- › The obstacle is a right-angle object such as a corner of a wall or the rear of a vehicle.
- › The vehicle is parked on grassy or bumpy roads.
- › The license plate is bent or tilting, or a large license plate decorative frame is installed.

Parking assist system

- › The ultrasonic radar is damaged, misaligned, or obscured by foreign objects (e.g. paint protective film).
- › To ensure the normal operation of the system, keep the sensor clean and free of snow and ice.

Collision avoidance radar

System description

An collision avoidance radar is a radar detection device. During parking, the sensor detects the obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle and the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle, as well as provides an alarm in the form of sound or sound and image, thus assisting the driver to park the vehicle safely and easily.

Instructions

Vehicle not equipped with AVM

- › With the power supply in ON mode or the vehicle started, shift to the R gear position, and the reverse radar automatically turn on.
- › Shift out of the R gear position, and the reverse radar will automatically turn off.

Vehicle equipped with AVM

The method of turning on and off is the same as that of the AVM.

Detection scope and alarm

| Sensor position | Detection scope [m] |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| Front on both sides | 0.6 |
| Rear centre | 1.5 |

If the sensor detects an obstacle within the detection scope after the reverse radar is turned on, it will sound an alarm.

As the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle decreases, the frequency of alarm sounds will gradually increase.

When the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle is within about 0.4 m, the alarm sound will be heard for a long time. In this case, the vehicle should not be reversed continuously to avoid a collision.

i NOTICE

The number of sensors installed in the vehicle varies depending on the configuration. If the front sensor is not installed, the system will not be able to alert you to obstacles in front.

Reverse camera

System description

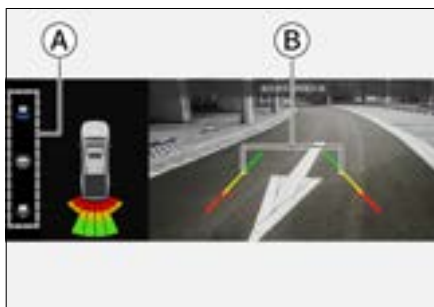
The reverse camera captures images behind the vehicle using the rear view camera and transmits the image signal to the screen for display, thereby assisting the driver to safely and easily park the vehicle.

Parking assist system

Instructions

- › With the power supply in ON mode or the vehicle started, shift to the R gear position, and the reverse camera automatically turn on.
- › Shift out of the R gear position, and the reverse camera will automatically turn off.

Camera interface



834E8F5D15D3

Ⓐ View mode button

You can select various view modes (normal view, wide-angle view, cross view) according to personal habits.

Ⓑ Dynamic guide line

The dynamic guide line can display the width of the vehicle body and calculate the movement track of the vehicle according to the angle of the steering wheel as well as assist the driver in parking the vehicle.

Around view monitor (AVM)


System description

The AVM uses four cameras to capture images about the vehicle and its surroundings and show them on the display. This helps the driver safely and easily drive to avoid accidents.

Instructions

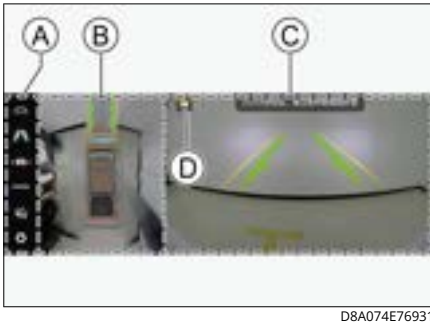


4DF1724A4B6C

- › With the power supply in ON mode or the vehicle started, press the button  to activate or deactivate the Around View Monitor (AVM) function.
- › Shift to the R gear position, and AVM will automatically activate.
- › Shift to the P gear position, and AVM will automatically deactivate.
- › The AVM will automatically deactivate when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (9 mph).

Parking assist system

Interface layout



- Ⓐ Function setting area
- Ⓑ Top view area
- Ⓒ Image area
- Ⓓ View identification
 - It indicates the orientation of the current view.

Function setting

: wide view

Touch the button to display the wide view corresponding to the current gear position, and touch the button again to exit the wide view.

: guide line

Touch the button to set the guide line to be revealed or hidden. The guide line displays the body width, which can assist the driver in parking.

: radar display

Touch the button to activate or deactivate the function. The radar will display the position of the detected obstacle after turning on the function.

MOD: moving object detection

Touch the button to activate or deactivate the function. After the function is activated, when a moving object like a pedestrian is detected, the image interface will display a warning message.

: vehicle washing station mode

Touch the button to activate or deactivate the function. After the function is activated, the tyre track will be displayed, and the line width indicates the tyre width.

: system setting

Touch the button to enter the system setting interface, and you can activate or deactivate the transparent chassis function. After this function is activated, as the vehicle moves, the AVM interface gradually displays the images of the road conditions below the vehicle.

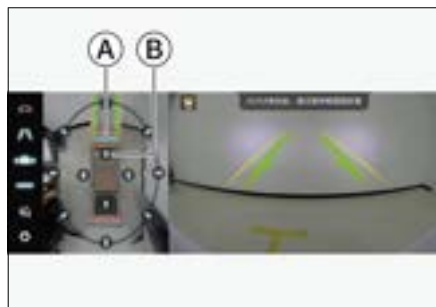
Auto view switch

Shift to the D gear position, and the system will automatically switch to the front view image. Shift to the R gear position, and the system will automatically switch to the rear view image.

Manual view switch

When the vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h (6 mph), touch the top view area to display the direction button. Touch the button indicating each direction, and the image area will display the view image corresponding to this button.

Parking assist system



Ⓐ Auto button

Ⓑ Free view

After selecting the free view, drag the image area to adjust the view at will.

Touch the **【Auto】** button to switch the image view back to the auto view. In the auto view, the system will automatically switch the view of the image area according to the transmission gear information.

Parking setting

You can set the related functions of the parking through **【Vehicle setting】** → **【Parking】** on the multimedia display screen. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for specific setting items.

Automatic front radar activation

After the function is activated, if the moving speed is less than 10 km/h (6 mph) and there is an obstacle detected within the detection range, the front radar and AVM system will turn on automatically. The system will automatically deactivate if within a few seconds the distance of the obstacle does not change, or the obstacle is far away, or the parking brake is applied.

360 AVM low speed setting in D gear

After this function is activated, every time you start the vehicle at a low speed in D gear for the first time, the AVM will automatically activate.

Road calibration

When the camera position changes due to loading, bumping of vehicles, or ageing of parts, the image mosaic may be misplaced, blurred and distorted. At this time, the image mosaic effect can be optimized through the road calibration setting.

Refer to the prompt information on the multimedia display for the specific calibration methods and requirements.

Restore factory

The AVM can be restored to the factory settings.

Blind spot imaging system

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Blind spot imaging system

System description

This system uses a camera installed at the bottom of the side mirror to capture images of the surrounding environment around the front tyre on the front passenger's side and then transmits and displays them on the multimedia display screen, thereby expanding the driver's field of vision and preventing collisions in that blind spot.

⚠ WARNING

- › This system is only an auxiliary tool and cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement on the external situation. The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle at all times and must always be aware of the surrounding environment during parking or similar driving operations.

- › The camera is an auxiliary tool. The objects shown in images may be distorted, may not reflect the full reality, or may not show all objects in the field of vision.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Never knock on the camera.
- › When cleaning the vehicle with high-pressure water, please do not spray around the camera. Otherwise, water may enter the camera, causing system malfunction or fires, etc.

Instructions







10E3D2F46E4E

- › When the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h (9 mph), press the **【SVC】** button on the steering wheel to activate or deactivate the blind spot imaging system.
- › When the forward speed exceeds a certain speed, the blind spot imaging system automatically deactivate.




Blind spot imaging system

After activating the blind spot imaging system, touch the ,  or  button on the multimedia display screen to manually select the viewing angle.

: front right view image.

: right view image.

: rear right view image.



Tyre pressure monitoring system

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

System description

The tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors tyre pressure and temperature in real time and alerts the driver to take appropriate actions to avoid an accident when an abnormality occurs in the tyre.

⚠ CAUTION


- › Using a replacement tyre that is not a genuine spare may interfere with the proper functioning of the TPMS.
- › TPMS may not work properly when the tyre chain is installed or the wheel is covered.
- › TPMS may not work properly due to radio interference.

- › After replacing a faulty tyre, it is recommended to promptly repair the faulty tyre and complete the tyre pressure sensor programming learning. Installing the faulty tyre on the vehicle may cause abnormal TPMS display.

i NOTICE

- › TPMS cannot be a substitute for regular tyre maintenance. Check the tyre frequently to ensure proper tyre pressure, even if no warning is received from TPMS.
- › Tyre pressure can be affected by factors such as the heat generated from vehicle operations, external environment, and journey time. Typically, a fluctuation of around 30 kPa in tyre pressure is normal.
- › The TPMS is unable to monitor the spare tyre pressure.

Tyre information display

Press the ◀ or ▶ button on the steering wheel to switch the instrument panel to the driving data interface , and then press the ▲ or ▼ button to access the tyre pressure monitoring interface so that you can view the pressure and temperature information of four in-use tyres.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

i NOTICE

If your vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, intelligent cruise control, and lane assist, please disable these functions or press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel to hide them before proceeding. Otherwise, you won't be able to access the instrument panel interface.

After stopping the vehicle for more than 17 minutes, the system will automatically complete tyre pressure learning and positioning by starting the vehicle and driving at a speed higher than 30 km/h (19 mph) for about 9 minutes.

If self-learning fails, please contact the authorised service centre as soon as possible and reset the TPMS.

Warning

When the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high, the instrument panel will provide following warning:

- › The related warning interface will pop up.
- › The pressure value or temperature value of the abnormal tyre flashes to give an alarm.
- › The tyre pressure monitoring system warning light (yellow) (⚠) on the instrument panel turns on.

If there is a warning message about tyres during driving, avoid sharp steering or harsh braking. Reduce the speed, drive to a safety area and stop the vehicle as soon as possible.

Self-learning function

Data update can automatically complete through the self-learning function after tyre replacement or tyre rotation.

Fatigue driving reminder system

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Fatigue driving reminder

System description

The fatigue driving reminder system identifies the driver's fatigue level by continuously detecting the driver's operation of the vehicle. If the system recognises driver fatigue, sound and visual alarms will be given, to alert the driver to drive with care.

⚠ WARNING

- › Fatigue driving is strictly prohibited. Reasonable parking intervals should always be arranged for long-distance driving to ensure adequate rest.
- › Drivers are always responsible for ensuring that they are in good driving condition.

- › Fatigue driving reminder function is only an auxiliary tool and may not be able to actually monitor driver fatigue. In some cases, the system may judge normal driving behaviour as fatigue.

On and off

You can activate or deactivate the fatigue driving reminder function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Fatigue warning

When the system detects the following conditions, the instrument panel will display the **【Please take a break】** warning screen, accompanied by an audible alarm.

- › When the driver fastens the seat belt and the speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph), the system detects that the driver is driving in a fatigue driving state.
- › The vehicle has been driven for 4 consecutive hours.

⚠ WARNING

- › This feature cannot be used to loosen driving restrictions. Regular stops must be arranged during the long driving for adequate rest.



Fatigue driving reminder system

› Operational capacity may remain unaffected in specific driving scenarios despite driver fatigue. In such circumstances, the system will not issue a warning. Therefore, if the driver shows signs of fatigue, it is important to stop and rest, even if no warning is issued by the system.

2

Driving

i NOTICE

If the vehicle speed is lower than 65 km/h (40 mph), the system will not issue a warning even if the driver shows signs of fatigue.



Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Cruise control

System description

While you drive on straight, smooth motorways, the cruise control system allows you to keep the vehicle at a certain speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

WARNING

- › This system is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions and for the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › To avoid misoperation of the cruise control system, deactivate it when it is not in use.
- › Incorrect use of the cruise control system can cause a crash.

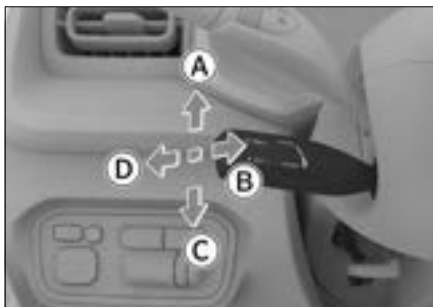
- › You can only use the cruise control system when the weather conditions are good and you are driving on a clear highway.
- › Using the cruise control system in urban areas, on meandering roads, on slippery roads, or in other adverse weather conditions is not recommended.
- › Never use the cruise control system when driving on slopes. The system cannot maintain a set speed while the vehicle is travelling uphill or downhill.
- › The driver must not leave driver's seat when the cruise control system is activated.
- › To keep fuel economy, do not drive at a low speed under a higher gear position, or drive at a high speed under a lower gear position.
- › After starting the cruise control system, to slow down the vehicle as soon as possible, depress the brake pedal normally.

Instructions

NOTICE

Since the cruise control system is designed for driving on highways and other roads with good conditions, the cruise control speed range should be within the range of 30 to 150 km/h (19 to 93 mph).


Cruise control



3404E89EB237

- Ⓐ Accelerating/resuming cruise control (RES+)
- Ⓑ ON/OFF (CRUISE)
- Ⓒ Setting cruise control speed/decelerating (SET-)
- Ⓓ Cancelling the setting speed (CANCEL)

Setting the cruise speed

1. Move the control lever to **【CRUISE】** and then release it to enable the cruise control.
The cruise control indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turns on, indicating that the system is activated.
2. Adjust the vehicle speed and move the control lever to **【SET-】** and release it. If the cruise control speed setting information is displayed on the instrument panel, the cruise control speed setting is completed.
In this case, the vehicle travels at the currently set speed.


⚠ CAUTION

- › It is not allowed to engage cruise control while the vehicle is in first gear position.
- › Engage cruise control in normal, economy, sport, or 2H mode. Otherwise, cruise control may not function properly.

Adjusting the set speed

- › Move the control lever to **【RES+】** or **【SET-】** and then release it to slightly increase or decrease the set speed. Repeat above operations to increase or reduce the set speed.
- › Move the control lever to **【RES+】** or **【SET-】** and hold it to continuously increase or decrease the speed. When the desired speed is reached, release it.


Cancelling the set speed

- › Depress the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.
 - › Move the control lever to **【CANCEL】**.
- When the set speed is cancelled, the system is not deactivated, and the cruise control indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel remains on.

At this time, please move the control lever to **【RES+】** and release it to resume the original cruise control setting.

Cruise control

Deactivating the system

Move the control lever to **【CRUISE】** and then release it to deactivate the system. The cruise control indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel will turn off.

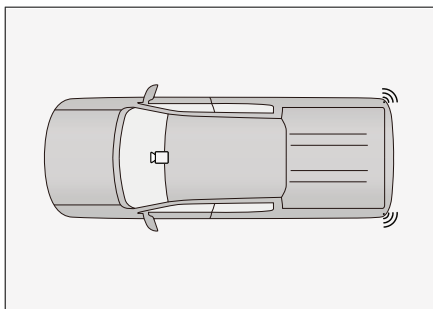
Intelligent driving assist system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Intelligent driving assist system sensor

The intelligent driving assist system detects the traffic situations around the vehicle using the camera and the radar sensor, and assists the driver in taking appropriate measures based on the detection results to improve safety and comfort while the vehicle is travelling.



F3957304AC2C

| Illustration | Description | Position |
|--------------|-----------------------|--|
| | Camera | Near the base of the interior rear-view mirror |
| | Millimetre wave radar | Inside the rear bumper |

i NOTICE

Due to different vehicle configurations, sensor types and quantities may vary. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

A WARNING

- › The intelligent driving assist system is intended as a supplementary system and is not designed to replace the driver's own judgement of the traffic conditions or to take control of the vehicle. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › When the vehicle has towing equipment installed or is towing another vehicle, the intelligent driving assist system can not work properly, so the function related to the intelligent driving should be deactivated.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

About the camera

The camera is used to identify lane boundaries, traffic signs, targets in front of the vehicle, etc., providing relevant information for the smart drive assist function.

WARNING

- › Do not remove or modify the camera without permission.
- › When the camera does not work properly, the functions relying on the camera to provide lane marking, traffic signs and target information will be limited.
- › The camera has a limited detection range and cannot detect the targets outside the limit range.
- › When the camera fails or is damaged, please contact the authorised service centre in time for repair or replacement.

WARNING

Many factors will affect the performance of the camera, resulting in detection performance degradation, detection delay, and detection errors. These factors include but are not limited to the followings:

- › Poor lighting conditions at night;
- › Weather conditions (such as rain, snow and fog) with poor visibility;

- › A situation in which a vehicle wobbles due to an undulating or uneven road;
- › A situation where the ambient light changes sharply;
- › A situation where a strong light shines the camera;
- › Deformed or damaged windscreen, causing the incorrect camera installation position and angle;
- › Complex intersections;
- › Too high or too low ambient temperature;
- › A situation where the camera is covered with a foreign object;
- › Short following distance and blocked camera;
- › A situation where a guardrail, an elevated road or a tree casts a shadow on a road;
- › Poor tunnel light;
- › A situation of passing through narrow bends and sharp turns;
- › Unclear lane markings.

NOTICE

When the instrument indicates that the system sensor detection is restricted, check and ensure the camera and its surroundings are clean and free of obstructions so that the system can operate properly.

Intelligent driving assist system

About the millimetre wave radar

The millimetre wave radar is used to detect the targets before the vehicle, providing relevant information for the intelligent driving assist function.

WARNING

- › Do not paint and modify the bumper without permission to avoid the limited detection performance of the millimetre wave radar.
- › When the millimetre wave radar cannot work normally, the function relying on the millimetre wave radar to provide detection information will be limited.
- › The millimetre wave radar has a limited detection range and cannot detect the targets outside the limit range.
- › When the millimetre wave radar fails or is damaged, please contact the authorised service centre in time for repair or replacement.

WARNING

Many factors will affect the performance of the millimetre wave radar, resulting in detection performance degradation, detection delay, and detection errors. These factors include but are not limited to the followings:

- › Severe weather (e.g. fog, haze, rain, snow and dust storm);

- › Foreign objects such as ice, snow, water, and dust attached to the surface of the millimetre wave radar, or bumper;
- › Misaligned or blocked millimetre wave radar;
- › The impact to the area around the millimetre wave radar and the bumper due to the collision of vehicles, scratches and other accidents;
- › Too small volume of the detected object;
- › Interference by electromagnetic wave of the same frequency;
- › The millimetre wave radar temperature is out of the working range due to the vehicle being in a high temperature or extremely cold environment.

NOTICE

The area around the millimetre wave radar and the bumper must be kept clean and free from foreign objects such as ice, snow and dust to ensure the normal operation of the millimetre wave radar.

When you find a foreign object attached to the surface of the millimetre wave radar, wipe it with a soft cloth or clean it with water.

- › Do not use the high-pressure water gun to flush the millimetre wave radar.
- › Do not use sharp or abrasive objects for cleaning.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving


- › Do not use chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners.

Forward assist system

The system recognises vehicles on the lane through the camera on the front windscreen. Upon detecting a collision risk ahead, the system will either sound a warning or take corrective measures to mitigate the risk of collision.

You can set the function related to front assist through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【Driving】** → **【Front assist】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

Press the intelligent driving button  on the left side of the steering wheel to quickly enter the intelligent driving interface.

⚠ WARNING

This system may not function as expected in all situations. Driving the vehicle towards pedestrians, animals or other vehicles for the purpose of testing the system is strictly prohibited. Failure to comply may result in serious injuries or death.

i NOTICE

- › When your vehicle is towing another vehicle, this system cannot work normally. In this case, please deactivate the system.

- › In complex driving conditions, the system may apply unnecessary braking. This may happen, for example, in construction sites, at railway tracks, and when water is sprayed or splashed in front of the vehicle.
- › This system may not work properly or even not work in low-visibility situations (such as rain, snow, sand or fog, and at night).
- › This system may not work properly or even not work in the event of sudden changes in environmental brightness, such as encountering strong light, backlighting, etc. when entering or exiting tunnels.
- › Please keep the area near the camera clean and unobstructed. Otherwise, the system will not work properly.
- › At a higher speed, the system may fail to recognize stationary targets and therefore not make a braking respond. The driver should be ready to actively brake at any time.
- › When a vehicle rushes to the front area of your vehicle at close range (especially buses, trucks, etc.), the system may not be able to identify it in time, resulting in the vehicle not being able to brake in time.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › This system is unable to recognise traffic lights, warning signs, and road buckets (cones) properly, so drivers should be prepared to brake actively at all times.
- › If the colour of the detectable object is almost the same as the surrounding environment, this system may not work properly or even not work.

Auto emergency braking

The auto emergency braking system can detect pedestrians, cyclists, most of stationary vehicles, or vehicles travelling in the same direction as your vehicle (e.g. passenger cars, trucks, buses, etc.).

- › No brake: the function is deactivated.
- › Brake: the brake assist function is on.

With the vehicle driving at a speed of 5 to 30 km/h (3 to 19 mph), the system will automatically brake the vehicle when it detects pedestrians or vehicles and there is a risk of collision.

With the vehicle driving at a speed greater than 30 km/h (19 mph), the system generally sounds an audible alarm first, and then brakes (limited braking) according to the degree of emergency when it detects pedestrians or vehicles and there is a risk of collision.

In some emergency situations, the system may brake directly.

i NOTICE

- › When the system applies emergency braking, the hazard warning lights will flash quickly to alert the rear vehicles, thereby reducing the risk of collision.
- › At low vehicle speeds, this function may slow the vehicle to a standstill, but will not keep the vehicle stationary. At this point, the driver should apply the brake actively.
- › If the driver steps on the accelerator pedal or turn the steering wheel during the emergency braking, the system will disengage the emergency braking.
- › If the vehicle speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and the system determines that the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is too small, the instrument panel will remind you to keep a safe distance. When the cruise control assist system is working, the safe distance alert function is hidden.
- › When the light is dark, the detection range will be affected, so please turn on the headlights when driving at night.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

i NOTICE

Detecting targets

- › For valid targets identified by the system, the system may not always achieve the same level of performance, depending on vehicles, pedestrians, scenes, and road conditions.

- › The cyclist must be an adult, and the bicycle is designed for adults.

The system can only work best when it detects clear information about the human body and the contour of the bicycle, which means that the system needs to clearly identify contour information such as the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, thighs, etc. of the rider and the normal cycling of the rider.

- › The system detects pedestrians in contrast to the background (e.g., the colour of the pedestrian clothing is contrasting with the colour of the surrounding environment). If the contrast is low, the pedestrian will be detected later or not at all, indicating that warnings and braking will be delayed or unavailable.

The system can only work best when it detects clear information about the shape of the human body, which means that the system needs to clearly identify information about the head, arms, shoulders, thighs, etc. of the rider and the normal walking pattern of the rider.

Front collision warning sensitivity

Sensitivity is divided into three levels.

- › Low: the system will give an alarm reminder when your vehicle is close to pedestrians or vehicles ahead.
- › Normal: the system will give an alarm reminder when the distance between your vehicle and pedestrians or vehicles ahead is set to the normal value by the system.
- › High: the system will give an alarm reminder when your vehicle is far from pedestrians or vehicles ahead.

Intelligent turning

With the smart cornering switch turned on and the vehicle driving by using the adaptive cruise control or intelligent cruise control, the smart cornering function will appropriately reduce the speed when the speed of entering a curve is too high.

⚠ WARNING

- › When entering and exiting a curve or driving in a curve, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead at the same lane timely. This could cause late braking. The driver must be alert and ready to take control over the vehicle at all times.
- › During driving through a curve, the system may mistakenly detect vehicles in other lanes, causing unnecessary braking.


Intelligent driving assist system

- › Driving on roads with sharp turns (such as serpentine roads or those with continuous tight bends) may exceed the system's cornering capability, potentially causing the vehicle to suddenly accelerate or deviate from its lane. Therefore, the driver needs to constantly pay attention to the surrounding environment and keep both hands on the steering wheel to drive cautiously.

Lane assist system

You can set the lane assist function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【Driving】** → **【Lane assist】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

Press the intelligent driving button  on the left side of the steering wheel to quickly enter the intelligent driving interface.

This system is designed for vehicles to travel on motorways and other roads with good conditions. By using the camera on the front windscreen, it recognizes the lane boundary, to remind the driver to correct the route when the driver unconsciously deviates from the lane. Some functions even assist the driver to correct the direction to reduce the risk of collision.

⚠ CAUTION

This system can only work normally when the lane boundary is clearly visible. It may not work properly or even not work in some cases. For example:

- › Lane boundaries are unclear, non-standard, or otherwise obscured.
- › There are objects on the road that affect the identification of lane boundaries (water, cracks, ruts, text signs, crosswalks, bumps or pits, etc.).
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.
- › The lanes merge or separate.
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a sharp turn, a narrow road, or a road prone to rollover.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

i NOTICE

- › If you turn on the turn signal light, turn the steering wheel, and depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal before passing through a lane boundary, the system will not send an alarm. In this case, the system considers that you are actively driving the vehicle.
- › When the driver controls the steering wheel with a small force, the system may not detect the driver's hand holding the steering wheel and will send a warning message.

Lane assist function

Activate the lane assist, and then you can select the assist mode.

- › Warning assist: it can warn the driver to drive safely when the driver deviates from the lane unconsciously.
- › Lane keep assist: it can assist the driver to correct the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in the lane when the driver deviates from the lane unconsciously. If the correction fails, the system will sound a warning to alert the driver to drive safely.

i NOTICE

The lane assist function can only work when the vehicle speed is the range of 60 to 150 km/h (37 to 93 mph).

After the lane assist function is activated, the lane boundary on the instrument panel has the following situations:

- › Grey: it indicates that the system does not detect the lane boundary or the vehicle speed does not meet the system working requirements.
- › White: it indicates that the system detects a lane boundary.
- › Green: it indicates the system is correcting the driving direction of the vehicle.
- › Red and flashing: it indicates that the system sounds a warning, and the driver needs to correct the direction in time to make the vehicle return to the lane.

Emergency lane keeping

When the function is activated, the system will more actively correct the steering wheel in case of an emergency to reduce the risk of collision. For example:

- › There is a risk of collision with vehicles in adjacent lanes when the vehicle is deviating from lanes or changing lanes.
- › When the vehicle is deviating from the lane or changing lanes, the outside of the lane is the shoulder.

Intelligent driving assist system

i NOTICE

The emergency lane keeping function can only work when the vehicle speed is within the range of 60 to 150 km/h (37 to 93 mph).

⚠ WARNING

In some cases, the emergency lane keeping function may not operate correctly or may be inactive. For example:

- › For smaller targets (motorcycles, bicycles, etc.)
- › For stationary targets.
- › The current vehicle is driving too close to the preceding vehicle, preventing the camera from detecting it.
- › The rear vehicle is driving too close to the current vehicle, preventing the sensor from detecting it.

Smart avoidance

Turn on this function, and activate intelligent cruise control during driving. If the system recognises that the vehicle is about to overtake the adjacent large vehicle (wagon, truck, bus, etc.), it will control the vehicle to move slightly away oversized the large vehicle. After overtaking the large vehicle, your vehicle will return to the central area of the current lane.

i NOTICE

- › The smart avoidance function will not begin to work until the vehicle speed reaches 60 to 140 km/h (37 to 87 mph).
- › When the cruise control is cancelled, this function is cancelled at the same time.

⚠ CAUTION

The following situations may not activate the smart avoidance function:

- › The system detects that there is a large vehicle on the adjacent lane on one side, and there are vehicles on the adjacent lane on the other side, or the adjacent lane on the other side is a curb.
- › The vehicle is driving in severe weather such as night, heavy fog, rain or snow.
- › The vehicle is in a curve.

Warning sensitivity

Sensitivity is divided into three levels: low, normal and high.

Rear side assist system


You can set the functions related to rear side assist through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【Driving】** → **【Rear side assist】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

i NOTICE

Press the intelligent driving button  on the left side of the steering wheel to quickly enter the intelligent driving interface.

This system can detect vehicles behind your vehicle or in the adjacent lane through sensors on both sides of the rear bumper. If there is a risk of collision, the system will issue an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely.

i NOTICE

- › Keep both sides of the rear bumper clean. Do not attach any objects, and ensure that no foreign materials such as ice, snow, or mud cover the sensors, as this may affect their normal operation.
- › Improper repair or modification may cause sensor misalignment, which may affect the normal operation of the system. Therefore, it is recommended to maintain and repair your vehicle at the authorised service centre.
- › When your vehicle is towing another vehicle, this system cannot work normally. In this case, please deactivate the system.

⚠ WARNING

In some cases, it may not work properly or even not work. For example:

- › For stationary targets (vehicles, pedestrians, etc.).
- › Driving in adverse conditions such as rain, and snow.
- › Driving on sharp turns, slopes, very wide or narrow lanes.

Warning lights



55E7BC54D193

The warning light is located on the inside of the front door, as shown in the figure.

i NOTICE

Do not paste any objects on the warning lights to avoid affecting the system warning function.

Intelligent driving assist system

Lane change assist

With the vehicle speed above 12 km/h (7 mph), when the system detects a vehicle in the blind area of the side mirrors or a fast approaching vehicle in the rear of the adjacent lane, the warning light on the corresponding side will turn on. If you turn on the turn signal light at the same side at this time, the warning light will flash and an audible warning will sound to indicate that it is dangerous to continue changing the lane.

Door open warning

The system detects that there are approaching vehicles, bicycles and other targets in the adjacent lanes on both sides after the vehicle stops. If there is a risk of collision when the door is opened, the warning light on the corresponding side will go on. If you continue to open the door at this time, the warning light will flash with an audible alarm, prompting you that it is dangerous to continue to open the door.

The door open warning system will only function in the following conditions:

- › The power supply is in the ON mode.
- › It is within 3 minutes after the power supply mode is switched from ON to OFF.

i NOTICE

When the power saving delay function setting value is less than 3 minutes, it will be executed according to the power saving delay setting.

Rear collision warning

When the system detects that there is a fast approaching vehicle behind the subject vehicle and there is a risk of collision, the left and right indicators will flash quickly, accompanied by an audible alarm and instrument panel prompts to remind the driver that a dangerous target is approaching, and warning the driver of rear vehicle to drive safely.

Rear cross traffic alert/braking

When the reverse side warning function is activated, if during reversing the system detects that there is a risk of collision with a moving vehicle in the blind area of the side mirror, it will give an alarm to remind the driver to drive safely.

When the rear cross traffic braking function is activated, limited braking can be applied when there is a risk in reversing, reducing the risk of collision.

i NOTICE

In some cases, the reverse side warning/brake function may be limited. For example:

- › There are obstacles blocking.

Intelligent driving assist system

The system cannot detect the objects behind other parked vehicles or obstacles.

- › The current vehicle speed is too high or too low.
- › The driver depresses the accelerator pedal firmly.
- › The driver turns the steering wheel quickly.

In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.

⚠ CAUTION

The system can work properly only when the speed sign is clearly visible. It may not work properly or even not work in some cases. For example:

- › A sign fades.
- › A sign is on a curve.
- › A sign is not properly positioned.
- › A sign is rotating or is damaged.
- › A sign is fully or partially blocked.
- › A sign is fully or partially covered by frost, snow, dust, etc.
- › A speed sign is placed in the position that is too far or too high.
- › A speed limit reminder or sign is attached to the road surface.
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

Traffic sign information

You can set the functions related to traffic sign through the 【Vehicle setting】 → 【Driving】 → 【Traffic sign】 interface on the multimedia display screen.

i NOTICE

Press the intelligent driving button ⓘ on the left side of the steering wheel to quickly enter the intelligent driving interface.

This system recognises traffic signs through the camera on the front windscreen and displays them on the instrument panel to assist the driver in driving.

⚠ WARNING

The system is designed to alert the driver to note traffic signs and is not intended to be used in all cases and is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road speed limit messages.

Intelligent driving assist system

i NOTICE

- › The unit for speed limit signs identified by the system will be consistent with the speed unit displayed on the instrument panel.
- › For multiple speed limit values on the same speed limit sign, the system will show the maximum value.
- › When multiple speed limit signs are arranged in parallel, the system will display the maximum speed limit value. Take the actual speed limit value of the current lane as the criterion.
- › The system may not be able to recognise a speed limit sign when the vehicle is turning.

Traffic sign recognition

After the function is activated, the traffic signs can be recognised and displayed on the instrument panel to assist the driver in driving.

Speed warning

After the traffic sign recognition function is activated, the over speed alarm function can be enabled. After the speed limit sign is recognised, in case of overspeeding, the system will give an alarm to remind the driver to reduce the speed to a suitable range as soon as possible.

Cruise control speed limit

After the traffic sign recognition function is activated, the cruise speed limit function can be enabled.

While cruising, if the system detects a speed limit sign of 40 km/h (25 mph) or higher and it differs from the current cruise control speed, the instrument panel will prompt you to adjust the cruise control speed. At this time, move the cruise control lever to the **【SET—】** position, and the system will update the cruise control speed according to the detected speed limit sign.

Overspeed warning sensitivity

You can set the warning timing for overspeed according to your driving habits.

- › 0: a warning will be given when the vehicle speed reaches the speed limit.
- › > 0: a warning will be given only when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit.
- › < 0: a warning will be given in advance when the vehicle speed does not reach the speed limit.

Adaptive cruise control system

While you drive on straight, smooth motorways, the adaptive cruise control system allows you to maintain the vehicle at a certain speed without depressing the accelerator pedal. When the system detects that the vehicle in front of you is moving at a speed less than the cruise control speed set for your vehicle, the vehicle will follow the preceding vehicle at a set safe distance.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

⚠ WARNING

- › This system is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions and for the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.
- › Improper use of the cruise control assist system may result in a collision.
- › Only use the adaptive cruise control system in good weather when the traffic is flowing well.

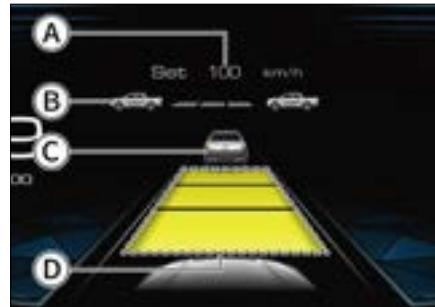
i NOTICE

- › When your vehicle is towing another vehicle, this system cannot work normally. In this case, please deactivate the system.
- › The adaptive cruise control system should be deactivated when it is not in use to avoid activating it accidentally.
- › The adaptive cruise control system is not recommended for use in conditions such as urban areas, winding roads, narrow roads, wet and slippery roads, heavy rain or other harsh weather conditions.
- › When you drive on a slope, the adaptive cruise control system is not recommended for use, based on the following points:

The cruise control assist system cannot maintain the set speed when you drive up and down the slope.

When the vehicle ahead passes the top or bottom of the slope, the adaptive cruise control system may be unable to detect the vehicle ahead, causing sudden acceleration or late braking.

Instrument panel display



992317F582B3

(A) Setting the speed

(B) Distance level

The distance level is not a fixed distance. Under the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the speed of the vehicle.

(C) Vehicle ahead

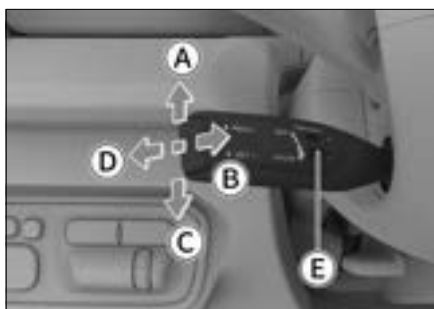
This icon is displayed when the system detects a vehicle ahead.

(D) Following distance

Intelligent driving assist system

The safety level of the distance between the vehicle and the preceding vehicle is displayed. As the distance decreases and the risk factor increases, different colours will be displayed to remind the driver to keep a safe distance.


Control lever




EA4CA6B6907B

- Ⓐ Accelerating/resuming cruise control (RES +)
- Ⓑ Activating the cruise control (CRUISE)
- Ⓒ Setting cruise control speed/decelerating (SET-)
- Ⓓ Deactivating the cruise control (OFF)
- Ⓔ Adjusting the distance level (DIS-TANCE)

Activating the cruise control

1. While driving, move the control lever to the **【CRUISE】** position to start the adaptive cruise control and enter the standby state. The ACC standby indicator light (white)  on the instrument panel turns on.

2. Move the control lever to the **【SET —】** position to activate the adaptive cruise control. At this time, the ACC working indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turns on.

NOTICE

The adaptive cruise control can only be activated when the following conditions are met:

- › All doors are completely closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › Start the vehicle and shift to the D gear position.
- › The electronic stability control system is on.
- › No parking brake is applied.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h (93 mph).
- › The vehicle is in the normal, ECO, sport or 2H mode.

NOTICE

The minimum set speed of the adaptive cruise control system is 30 km/h (19 mph). When your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph), the system will set the speed to 30 km/h (19 mph); when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (19 mph), the system will activate the cruise control function at the current speed.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

Adjusting the cruise control speed

Move the control lever to the **【RES +】** or **【SET—】** position and then release it to slightly increase or decrease the cruise control speed.

Move the control lever to the **【RES +】** or **【SET—】** position and hold it to continuously increase or decrease the cruise control speed. When the desired speed is reached, release the control lever.

i NOTICE

The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, the vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead at the set distance level.

Adjusting the distance level

Move the **【DISTANCE】** adjustment lever to adjust the following distance with the vehicle in front.

The distance level is not a fixed distance, but a following distance between your vehicle and the preceding vehicle. The following distance between your vehicle and the preceding vehicle will vary with the speed of your vehicle under the same distance level.

i NOTICE

- › Setting a low distance level may result in a delayed reaction in unexpected situations. You are always responsible for adjusting the distance level appropriately.
- › Compared with driving on a dry road, driving on a slippery road requires a greater distance level.

Cancelling the cruise control

Depress the brake pedal to cancel the cruise control.

i NOTICE

The cruise control function will automatically exit in the following situations:

- › Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- › The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › The driver door is opened.
- › The parking brake is applied.
- › The anti-lock braking system is activated.
- › The hill descent control system is activated.
- › The electronic stability control (ESC) is activated or deactivated.
- › The vehicle rolls backwards.
- › The brake disc is overheated.
- › The vehicle is shut down.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › The vehicle is not in the normal, ECO, sport or 2H mode.

Resuming the cruise control speed

While driving, move the control lever to the **【RES +】** position and release it to reactivate the cruise control system. The set vehicle speed at this time is the previous set value.

i NOTICE

The cruise control speed recovery function can only be used when the following conditions are met:

- › The cruise control system is not turned off after the cruise is cancelled.
- › The power supply switch is not turned off after the cruise is cancelled.

Deactivating the cruise control system

Move the control lever to the **【OFF】** position and release it to turn off the cruise control system.

Following start-off function

This function allows your vehicle to follow another vehicle at 0 to 150 km/h (0 to 93 mph).

In the case of traffic congestion, this function can slow down the vehicle to a stop by following the preceding vehicle. In this case:

- › If the preceding vehicle leaves within 3 s, your vehicle will automatically follow it.
- › If the preceding vehicle stops for a long time (3 s to 3 mins), lightly step on the accelerator pedal to restart the system.
- › If the preceding vehicle is parked for more than 3 minutes, your vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.
- › If the driver opens the door or releases the seat belt, the vehicle will automatically apply the parking brake.

i NOTICE

Cancelling the cruise control function will automatically deactivate the following start-off function.

Smart cornering function

You can activate or deactivate the smart cornering function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【Driving】** → **【Front assist】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

For details, please refer to "Front assist".
(▷ Page 169)

Functional limitations

Under the following conditions, the cruise control system may not take the braking measures:

- › A vehicle suddenly appears in front of your vehicle.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

- › There is a low-speed or stationary vehicle ahead when your vehicle is at high speed.
- › An oncoming vehicle is running in the same lane.
- › A vehicle or object crosses a lane.
- › A pedestrian, an animal, a roadblock, a cone barrel, a trailer, a special-shaped vehicle or a small vehicle (such as a bicycle or a motorcycle) appears.
- › The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.
- › Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles hinders the sensor detection.
- › The vehicle head tilts up due to overload in the luggage area.
- › The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- › The rear of the vehicle ahead is small or is raised very high off the ground.
- › Your steering wheel control is unsteady, or you're not maintaining a stable position within the lane.
- › Rain, snow, fog, sand or other bad weather happens.
- › A vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.

Intelligent cruise control system

The intelligent cruise control system is based on the adaptive cruise control system. When the sensor detects the lane boundaries, it can assist the driver to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane and help the driver control the vehicle safely and easily.

⚠ WARNING

This system cannot cope with all traffic, weather and road conditions. Under poor light conditions (e.g. at night and in cloudy days), rapid changes in light (e.g. in and out of tunnels), large-scale shadows on the ground (objects and landscape features projected on the road surface), and other circumstances, the recognition capability of the sensor will be limited. Therefore, the system cannot be a substitute for the driver's judgement of road conditions. In any case, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and must always drive carefully and abide by the applicable laws and road traffic rules.

Intelligent driving assist system

⚠ CAUTION

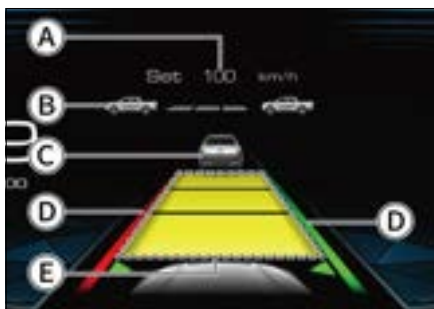
When using the intelligent cruise control system, you must hold the steering wheel. If the driver takes both hands off the steering wheel for a long time, the system will send an alarm to remind the driver of taking over the vehicle. If the driver fails to take over the vehicle in time, the system will perform an emergency stop in the lane.

Emergency stop process: turn on the hazard warning lights, slowly brake and stop the vehicle, shift to the P gear position, and apply the parking brake.

i NOTICE

When your vehicle is towing another vehicle, this system cannot work normally. In this case, please deactivate the system.

Instrument panel display



FAEA91C2BD25

(A) Setting the speed

(B) Distance level

The distance level is not a fixed distance. Under the same distance level, the following distance will vary with the speed of the vehicle.

(C) Vehicle ahead

This icon is displayed when the system detects a vehicle ahead.

(D) Lane boundary

Grey: it indicates that the system does not detect the lane boundary or the vehicle speed does not meet the system working requirements.

White: it indicates that the system detects a lane boundary.

Green: it indicates the system is correcting the driving direction of the vehicle.

Red and flashing: it indicates that the system sounds a warning, and the driver needs to correct the direction in time to make the vehicle return to the lane.

(E) Following distance

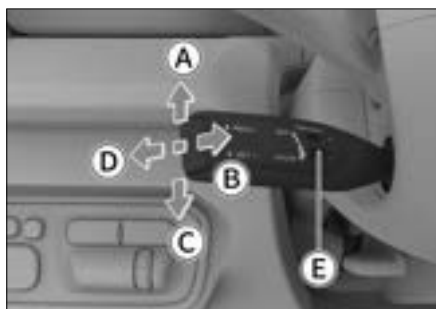
The safety level of the distance between the vehicle and the preceding vehicle is displayed. As the distance decreases and the risk factor increases, different colours will be displayed to remind the driver to keep a safe distance.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving



Control lever



EA4CA6B6907B

- Ⓐ Acceleration (RES +)
- Ⓑ Activating the cruise control (CRUISE)
- Ⓒ Deceleration (SET-)
- Ⓓ Deactivating the cruise control (OFF)
- Ⓔ Adjusting the distance level (DISTANCE)

Activating the cruise control

1. During driving, move the control lever to the **【CRUISE】** position twice to activate the intelligent cruise control and enter the ready state. At this time, the intelligent cruise control standby indicator light (white)  on the instrument panel turns on.
2. Move the control lever to the **【SET -】** position to activate the intelligent cruise control. The intelligent cruise control indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turns on.

NOTICE

The intelligent cruise control can only be activated when the following conditions are met:

- › All doors are completely closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › Start the vehicle and shift to the D gear position.
- › The electronic stability control system is on.
- › No parking brake is applied.
- › The vehicle speed is less than 150 km/h (93 mph).
- › The vehicle is in the normal, ECO, sport or 2H mode.
- › The system detects lane boundaries or vehicles moving ahead.

If the above conditions are not met, the system will exit. In this case, the driver should immediately take over the vehicle brake pedal, accelerator pedal and steering wheel to control the speed and direction of the vehicle.

CAUTION

The minimum set speed of the intelligent cruise control system is 30 km/h (19 mph). When your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph), the system will set the speed to 30 km/h (19 mph); when your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (19 mph), the system will activate the cruise control function at the current speed.

Intelligent driving assist system

Adjusting the cruise control speed

Move the control lever to the **【RES +】** or **【SET-】** position and then release it to slightly increase or decrease the cruise control speed.

Move the control lever to the **【RES +】** or **【SET-】** position and hold it to continuously increase or decrease the cruise control speed. When the desired speed is reached, release the control lever.

i NOTICE

The vehicle will accelerate to the set speed only when the road ahead is clear. Otherwise, the vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead at the set distance level.

Adjusting the distance level

Move the **【DISTANCE】** adjustment lever to adjust the following distance with the vehicle in front.

The distance level is not a fixed distance, but a following distance between your vehicle and the preceding vehicle. The following distance between your vehicle and the preceding vehicle will vary with the speed of your vehicle under the same distance level.

i NOTICE

- › Setting a low distance level may result in a delayed reaction in unexpected situations. You are always responsible for adjusting the distance level appropriately.
- › Compared with driving on a dry road, driving on a slippery road requires a greater distance level.

Cancelling the cruise control

Depress the brake pedal to cancel the cruise control.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle will not be controlled by the cruise control system after the intelligent cruise control function is cancelled. The driver should take over control of the steering wheel, the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal immediately to avoid danger.

Intelligent driving assist system

2

Driving

i NOTICE

When the driver applies a greater force to the steering wheel or turns the wheel in the opposite direction, the vehicle steering control is temporarily taken over and the smart cruise lateral control function is temporarily inhibited. Only the longitudinal control is enabled, downgrading to adaptive cruise control. After the driver ends the control of the steering wheel, the intelligent cruise control will automatically activate again.

i NOTICE

The cruise control function will automatically exit in the following situations:

- › Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- › The N, R or P gear position is engaged.
- › The driver seat belt is released.
- › The driver door is opened.
- › The parking brake is applied.
- › The anti-lock braking system is activated.
- › The hill descent control system is activated.
- › The electronic stability control (ESC) is activated or deactivated.
- › The vehicle rolls backwards.
- › The brake disc is overheated.
- › The vehicle is shut down.

- › The vehicle is not in the normal, ECO, sport or 2H mode.

Resuming the cruise control speed

While driving, move the control lever to the **【RES +】** position and release it to reactivate the cruise control system. The set vehicle speed at this time is the previous set value.

i NOTICE

The cruise control speed recovery function can only be used when the following conditions are met:

- › The cruise control system is not turned off after the cruise is cancelled.
- › The power supply switch is not turned off after the cruise is cancelled.

Deactivating the cruise control system

Move the control lever to the **【OFF】** position and release it to turn off the cruise control system.

Functional limitations

Under the following conditions, the cruise control system may not take the braking measures:

- › A vehicle suddenly appears in front of your vehicle.

Intelligent driving assist system

- › There is a low-speed or stationary vehicle ahead when your vehicle is at high speed.
- › An oncoming vehicle is running in the same lane.
- › A vehicle or object crosses a lane.
- › A pedestrian, an animal, a roadblock, a cone barrel, a trailer, a special-shaped vehicle or a small vehicle (such as a bicycle or a motorcycle) appears.
- › The vehicle in front decelerates suddenly.
- › Water, snow or mud splashed by surrounding vehicles hinders the sensor detection.
- › The vehicle head tilts up due to overload in the luggage area.
- › The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- › The rear of the vehicle ahead is small or is raised very high off the ground.
- › Your steering wheel control is unsteady, or you're not maintaining a stable position within the lane.
- › Rain, snow, fog, sand or other bad weather happens.
- › A vehicle is moving on a road with a large slope.
- › There are objects on the road that affect the identification of the lane boundaries (water, gaps, ruts, text signs, bumps or pits, etc.).
- › There is low visibility (rain, snow, fog and haze, night, etc.).
- › The vehicle is strongly affected by the crosswind.
- › The lanes merge or divide and are not clear in some areas, such as intersections, ramps, and waiting areas.
- › A strong light shines on the camera, or the light intensity abruptly changes.
- › The front windscreen around the camera is dirty, frozen, damaged or covered.
- › The vehicle is running on a winding or narrow road.
- › The vehicle is running too close to the preceding vehicle, and the camera detection scope is hindered.

The intelligent cruise control function may not work properly or even not work in certain situations. For example:

- › There are no lane boundaries, or the lane boundaries on both sides are unclear, non-standard, or obscured.

Off-road cruise control assist system

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.


Off-road cruise control assist

System description

The system allows you to keep your vehicle at a set speed without stepping on the accelerator pedal or brake pedal. The system can be used when the vehicle is driving at low speed in 4L mode and in off-road conditions, bumpy road conditions, or when the vehicle is getting out of trouble.

WARNING

- › This system is only an auxiliary tool. It is not a substitute for the driver's judgement on road and traffic conditions and for the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.

- › Improper use of this system may lead to collision accidents.
- › If this system is used continuously for a long time, it may cause the system to overheat. At this point, the instrument panel will display a warning message and the off-road cruise control work indicator light (green)  will turn off. In this case, please immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the vehicle to allow the system to cool down.
- › When the single-sided wheels slip while the vehicle is in this system operation, lock the rear axle differential lock in time.

CAUTION

In some cases, the system may not be able to maintain a fixed low speed, which may result in an accident. For example:

- › A steep slope.
- › Extremely uneven roads.
- › Snow, icy roads, or other wet and slippery roads.

NOTICE


- › This system is not available when the vehicle is at high speed.
- › As this system is designed for off-road driving, the cruise control speed is 5 to 12 km/h (3 to 7 mph).

Off-road cruise control assist system



On and off



49EF16E4E2D8

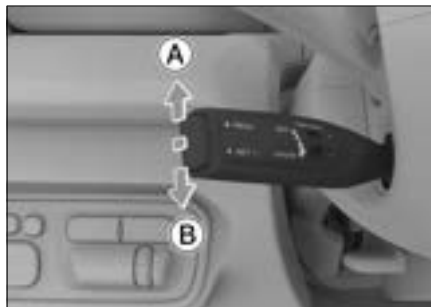
When the following conditions are met, press the off-road cruise control button  on the auxiliary console to turn on the off-road cruise control assist system. After shifting to D or M gear position, the vehicle will automatically enter the cruise control working state. Press the button again to turn off the system.

- › The current vehicle speed is below 20 km/h (12 mph).
- › The driver door is completely closed.
- › The driver wears the seat belt properly.
- › The vehicle is in 4L mode.
- › Start the vehicle, depress the brake pedal in N gear position or shift to the D gear position.
- › The parking brake has been released.

After the off-road cruise control function is activated, if the off-road cruise control standby indicator light (white)  on the instrument panel turns on, it indicates that the off-road cruise control is ready; if the off-road cruise control working indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turns on, it indicates that the off-road cruise control has entered the working state.

Cruising speed setting

- › Move the control lever to the **【RES+】** or **【SET-】** position to adjust the set speed.



B7DC0F370AF3

- Ⓐ Acceleration
- Ⓑ Deceleration

- › Depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, and release the pedal after reaching the desired speed.

Recommended off-road cruise control gear position

The following lists some typical terrain and recommended off-road cruise control gear positions for reference only:

Off-road cruise control assist system

| Off-road cruise control gear positions (reference values) | Road conditions |
|---|--|
| Gear position 1 to gear position 2 | Rocky road, bumpy road (downward slope), cross-axis road, etc. |
| Gear position 3 to gear position 4 | Bumpy road (upward slope), gravel road (downward slope), etc. |
| Gear position 5 to gear position 6 | Snow, mud, gravel road (flat road or upward slope), etc. |
| Gear position 7 to gear position 8 | Sand, mud, grassland, integrated cross-country road, etc. |

Steering assist

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Steering assist (The Tank turning)

System description


Please use this system when the off-road cruise control assist is activated; otherwise, the system will not function properly. (▷ Page 189)


This system improves the off-road performance of the vehicle, effectively reduces the turning radius, and thereby enhances turning performance while maintaining the set speed.

Instructions




A14C6B48A23F

1. After enabling the off-road cruise control function, press the steering assist button  to activate the steering assist function. Press the button again to deactivate the function.

If the steering assist standby indicator light (white)  on the instrument panel turns on, it indicates that the function is activated and in standby status.

2. Shift to D or M gear position, turn the steering wheel to the end (counterclockwise or clockwise to the end), release the brake pedal, and the steering assist function works.

If the steering assist work indicator light (green)  on the instrument panel turns on, it indicates that the steering assist function works.

NOTICE

For using the steering assist, the following conditions must be met:

- ▷ The vehicle speed is below 15 km/h (9 mph).
- ▷ The rear axle differential lock is not locked.
- ▷ The accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not depressed deeply.

NOTICE

The steering assist function works best when the off-road cruise control is set to the lowest speed.

Steering assist

CAUTION

Do not use the steering assist function on paved roads. Otherwise, the damage to transmission machinery component and tyre wear will be accelerated.

2

Driving

Driving assist system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Driving assist system safety tips

About traffic safety

Never take a risk in driving because the vehicle is equipped with driving assist systems and always ensure that the vehicle speed and driving style adapt to vision, weather, road and traffic conditions.

About modification

Suspension modification or use of tyres or wheels of non-specified size will impact driving assist systems and may cause system malfunctions.

About sound and vibration

- › Some driving assist systems (such as anti-lock brake system) may create a vibration during work or the sound of the motor during working may be heard, which does not indicate a malfunction.

- › When the vehicle is started across due to battery loss, the engine may not run smoothly and the anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system warning light turns on. This is caused by low battery voltage. This does not mean that the anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control system is faulty.

Anti-lock brake system

When brake is applied or the vehicle is braked suddenly during driving on wet and slippery road, the anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps to prevent wheels from locking to maintain steering control of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

During emergency braking, do not step on the brake pedal several times or gently step on it. Otherwise, it will lengthen the braking distance.

The ABS is not designed to shorten the braking distance of the vehicle. Be sure to maintain an adequate safe distance from the vehicle traveling in front as your vehicle may require a longer braking distance, compared with vehicles not equipped with the ABS in the following cases:

- › When driving on muddy, gravel or snowy road.
- › When driving with tyre chains in place.
- › When driving on bumpy road.

- › When driving on potholes or uneven road.

The ABS may not work effectively in the following conditions:

- › When the limit of tyre grip performance is exceeded (like using excessive wear tyre on snowy road).
- › When driving at a high speed on wet and slippery road.

Electronic braking force distribution system

The electronic braking force distribution (EBD) system is capable of automatically adjusting the front and rear braking force ratio to enhance braking efficiency. It complements the ABS for greater braking stability and thereby vehicle stability.

Braking force assist system

Stepping on brake pedal very quickly can trigger the braking force assist system to help increase the braking effect and shorten the braking distance during emergency braking.

Traction control system

When you start or accelerate on a wet and slippery road, the traction control system (TCS) helps to keep a driving force and avoid driving wheel spinning.

Rollover prevention system

When the vehicle turns a corner, the rollover prevention system (RMI) determines whether there is a risk of rollover by monitoring the movement status of the vehicle. If any, RMI will decelerate one or more wheels to refrain the vehicle from a rollover accident.

Secondary collision mitigation system

The secondary collision mitigation system (SCM) will automatically apply the braking to the vehicle after the first collision (airbag deployment) to reduce the vehicle speed or stop the vehicle, thereby reducing the chance and injury of a second collision.

HHC (Hill-start Hold Control)

When the driver starts on a slope and releases the brake pedal, the hill-start hold control (HHC) can maintain the braking force for about 2 seconds to effectively avoid rolling.

WARNING

When starting on a slope greater than 30%, the vehicle may still roll. Therefore, do not rely excessively on this feature. Please pay attention to the safe driving.

Driving assist system

Hill descent control system (HDC)

While going downhill, the hill descent control system (HDC) may actively brake to ensure that the driver can maintain a constant speed and drive downhill safely.

⚠ WARNING

- › The HDC is intended only to be an aid. At all times the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle, and always pay attention to the surrounding traffic.
- › In case of a very steep slope, the HDC may not function and thus the vehicle can't be driven down the slope at a constant speed. At this time, you can control the vehicle speed by stepping on the brake pedal.


i NOTICE




- › It is recommended that HDC should be used in a lower gear position.
- › The HDC will automatically turn off when the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h (37 mph).
- › After activating the HDC, you can still adjust the speed by depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

On and off




F7EB572ECD97

With the power supply in ON mode or the vehicle started, press the button  to turn on or off the HDC.

- › After the HDC is activated, the hill descent control indicator light (yellow)  on the instrument panel goes on.
- › After the HDC is deactivated, the hill descent control indicator light (yellow)  on the instrument panel turns off.
- › When the HDC is working, the hill descent control indicator light (yellow)  on the instrument panel flashes.

Electronic stability control system

The electronic stability control (ESC) system can help reduce the risk of side slip, and improve driving stability by braking individual wheel under certain driving situation.

When ESC works, the ESC warning light (yellow)  on the instrument panel flashes. Make sure to be more careful at this time.

Driving assist system

2

Driving

i NOTICE

In general, the ESC should always be activated. You can deactivate the system only under following special conditions:



- › Drive with tyre chains.
- › Drive in deep snow or on soft ground.
- › The vehicle is stuck and you need to free it.

Activate the ESC as soon as you exit above conditions.

On and off



44B40061C94D

After the vehicle starts, press the ESC OFF button . The ESC OFF indicator light (yellow)  on the instrument panel turns on, indicating that the system is off. Press the button again to restart the ESC system.

i NOTICE

The ESC will automatically turn on in the following conditions:

- › The vehicle is started.

- › The vehicle speed exceeds 85 km/h (53 mph).

Dynamic stability tracing system

Safety prompt

The dynamic stability tracing (DST) system is only an auxiliary tool and is not a substitute for the driver's judgement of road and traffic conditions, nor it can replace the driver's driving. Under any circumstances, the driver should be responsible for the safety of the vehicle and must concentrate on driving carefully at all times.

System description

In situations where there is a large difference in left and right wheel adhesion factors (some snowy and icy road, wet and slippery road, etc.), the DST can automatically adjust the steering wheel angle to correct the direction of driving when the vehicle is emergency braking or accelerating, depending on the wheel speed difference on both sides of the same axle and the vehicle dynamic change.

When the DST is active, the steering wheel angle automatically adjusts only within a limited range. The driver needs to actively adjust the steering wheel angle to ensure correct direction of driving, depending on actual driving conditions.



Driving assist system

Turning on or off the system

You can activate or deactivate this function through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Driving control】** → **【Dynamic stability tracing】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

NOTICE

Please make sure the ESC is activated, or the DST switch is not working.



Emission control system

2

Driving

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Reminder

The emission control system may vary with different engine models. For the particular equipment, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Do not modify any part of the engine or emission control system.

Oxygen sensor

The oxygen sensor measures the concentration of oxygen in the exhaust gases and reports that information to the ECU in order to regulate the engine's fuel-air ratio for optimum combustion efficiency and to reduce the amount of carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides contained in the exhaust.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter is the most important external purifier installed in the vehicle's exhaust system. The catalytic converter contains metallic catalysts that convert harmful gases such as carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, and nitrogen oxides into harmless carbon dioxide, water, and nitrogen through oxidation and reduction reactions.

As long as the catalytic converter is used correctly, it generally does not require maintenance. Thus, it should not be disassembled without cause. If replacement is necessary, please contact the service provider.

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter, please pay attention to the following items:

- › Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with more than the standard amount of manganese or sulphur.
- › Do not drive a vehicle with extremely low fuel level. If the fuel is exhausted, it will cause the engine to misfire (this may be confirmed by unstable engine operation or a loss of power), damaging the catalytic converter.
- › Do not idle the engine at a high speed for an extended time (5 minutes or longer).

Emission control system

- › When a problem with the engine is indicated (such as shutdown or performance degradation), please do not continue driving the vehicle.
- › Do not operate the engine with the spark plugs removed.
- › Do not start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it.
- › Do not add too much engine oil.
- › Please avoid striking the catalytic converter.

Exhaust gas recirculator

The exhaust gas recirculator feeds a portion of the exhaust back into the intake, mixing it with new air to be combusted within the cylinder. By recirculating the exhaust in this way, the amount of nitrogen compounds expelled is effectively reduced.

Turbocharger

The turbocharger can improve fuel efficiency of the engine, improve the vehicle's power and performance, and reduce the displacement of harmful compounds such as particulates and nitrogen oxides in the engine exhaust.

Fuel evaporation control unit

When the vehicle is running normally, the fuel evaporation control unit can make the fuel steam enter the engine to burn, so as to prevent the fuel steam from entering the atmosphere.

Crankcase emission control unit

The crankcase emission control unit guides the mixed gases within the crankcase (such as uncombusted fuel vapours, water vapour, and exhaust) through a connected pipe into an appropriate place in the air-intake pipe to return them to the cylinders and be combusted again. Thus, the exhaust gas can be reduced while the engine fuel economy improved.

High pressure common rail system

The high pressure common rail system consists of a high pressure oil pump, a fuel rail, fuel injectors and a controller. Compared with the traditional system, the high-pressure common rail system can realize precise fuel injection control, automatic adjustment of fuel injection timing under full working conditions and fault self-diagnosis. Precise fuel injection control can reduce emissions, improve engine performance and cut down fuel consumption.

On-board diagnostic system

The engine system malfunction warning light is part of the vehicle's on-board diagnostic system.

Emission control system

2

Driving

The engine electronic control unit equipped with the on-board diagnostic system stores various fault information (especially when it comes to exhaust-emissions fault information). The fault information will be cleared if the battery cables are disconnected, making a rapid diagnosis difficult. Therefore, do not disconnect the battery cable when checking the cause of the engine system malfunction warning light illumination.

When the vehicle is diagnosing the fuel evaporation control system, the carbon canister cut-off valve at the rear of the vehicle will produce the normal operating sound of "thump".

AdBlue injection control system

Type I

The AdBlue injection control system is composed of an AdBlue tank, an AdBlue pump assembly integrated in the AdBlue tank, a supply pipeline, a filling pipeline and a nozzle. The engine control module (ECM) can control the AdBlue injection amount and the injection time, so as to reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust.

Type II

The AdBlue injection control system is composed of an AdBlue tank, an AdBlue pump assembly integrated in the AdBlue tank, an AdBlue control unit, a supply pipeline, a filling pipeline and a nozzle. The AdBlue pump controller can work in coordination with the engine control module (ECM) to control the AdBlue injection amount and the injection time, so as to reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust.

Diesel particulate filter

Function introduction

A diesel particulate filter (DPF) is a kind of filter installed in the diesel engine exhaust system. It can capture fine particles before they are released into the atmosphere, helping to reduce environmental pollution.

Automatic regeneration procedure

During driving, when the particulate matter captured in the DPF reaches certain conditions, the vehicle will automatically start the regeneration procedure to fully burn the particulate matter, so that the DPF can be able to capture the particulate matter again.

Emission control system

When warming up the engine and stopping the vehicle to allow the engine to idle, the speed remains at about 1000 rpm, indicating that the vehicle is in the particulate filter self-cleaning mode. To facilitate the self-cleaning, it is recommended to operate as follows until the engine idling speed returns to normal:

- › Try to drive at a constant speed on roads in good conditions.
- › Try to prevent the engine from running at idle speeds.
- › Try to avoid vehicle stopping or engine shutdown.

⚠ WARNING

Observe all traffic laws and regulations during the automatic regeneration procedure.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Regularly change the engine oil using the specified brand and grade.
- › To avoid an increase in particulate matter or catalyst poisoning due to oil-related issues, only diesel fuel that meets national regulations and standards should be used, and fuel additives should be avoided.

i NOTICE

To facilitate the regeneration process, please adhere to the following advices:

- › Avoid long-term or frequent low-speed and full-throttle running of the engine.
- › Avoid long-term or frequent engine idling.
- › Avoid frequent vehicle stopping or engine shutdown.
- › Avoid frequent short-distance driving.

Manual regeneration procedure

Under some special circumstances, due to the insufficient automatic regeneration procedure, the warning information will be triggered after the particulate matter in the DPF reaches certain conditions. At this time, the engine torque and vehicle speed will be somewhat limited.

If the instrument panel shows **【Exhaust self-cleaning】**, it indicates that the DPF needs to execute the manual regeneration procedure immediately.

Please strictly abide by the following steps to execute the manual regeneration procedure or complete the regeneration procedure under the guidance of the authorised service centre:

1. Select a flat and safe position to park, shift to the N gear position (manual transmission vehicle) or P gear position (automatic transmission vehicle), turn off the engine and apply the parking brake.

Emission control system

2

Driving

2. Check the oil level after waiting for 15 minutes.

If the level is higher than the upper limit, please stop using the vehicle and contact the authorised service centre immediately.

If the level is normal, start the vehicle so that the engine coolant temperature can reach over 30°C (at least two scale of gauge pointer).

3. Start the vehicle and keep it running at idle speed. Press and hold the manual regeneration button for 5 seconds and then release it. The vehicle enters the manual regeneration mode. The engine speed will automatically rise to about 2000 r/min. At the same time, the instrument panel indicates that the **【DPF Self-cleaning】**.



798912C07003

4. The regeneration procedure will finish after waiting for 10 to 20 minutes, and the instrument panel shows that **【Self-cleaning over Thx. for waiting】**.

At this time, the engine speed will automatically decrease to the idle speed.

⚠ WARNING

- › When the manual regeneration procedure is running, it will result in high temperature. Therefore, do not park the vehicle close to hay, woods and other flammable materials.
- › Do not implement the manual regeneration procedure in the garage and other closed environments.

i NOTICE

- › To facilitate DPF regeneration, it is recommended to turn on the A/C during regeneration.
- › Upon the completion of the regeneration procedure, the instrument panel will not show **【Exhaust self-cleaning】**, indicating that the regeneration is successful and the vehicle can be used normally. The engine system fault warning light (yellow) will turn off when the vehicle is started for the fourth time.
- › Please do not perform any operations during the regeneration procedure. Otherwise, the regeneration procedure may exit automatically.

Emission control system

- › If the vehicle is used for emergency, you can exit the procedure through operations such as stepping on the clutch pedal, brake pedal or accelerator pedal, etc. However, the warning message may not disappear and further actions are still required.

If left untreated for a long time, the DPF may become severely clogged, and the instrument panel will display the message **【Particulate filter is seriously blocked. Have it checked】**. At this point, regeneration will not be possible, and you must go to a authorised service centre for handling.

- › If the procedure message is still not eliminated upon the completion of the regeneration procedure, please contact the authorised service centre immediately.

Gasoline particulate filter

Function introduction

The gasoline particulate filter (GPF) is a part of the vehicle's exhaust gas emission reduction system. It captures the fine particulate matter before it is released into the atmosphere, thereby reducing atmospheric pollution. When GPF reaches a certain condition, it will fully burn the particulate matter to prevent the exhaust system from becoming clogged and maintain power and economy of the vehicle.

WARNING

Flammable materials are not allowed to be added to the exhaust pipe, gasoline particulate filter, or heat shield, as high temperatures will be generated during the regeneration process. Otherwise, fire accidents may occur.

Regeneration procedure

When the accumulation of carbon particulate matter within GPF reaches a certain level, and the vehicle meets the conditions for GPF regeneration during driving, the regeneration procedure will start automatically. The regeneration procedure will burn the particulate matter sufficiently to keep the GPF in a stable and efficient working state.

If the driving conditions are not satisfied and the vehicle can not automatically start the regeneration procedure for a long time, a warning prompt **【GPF needs to be regenerated】** will appear on the instrument panel. At this point, start the engine (and ensure that the water temperature gauge indicates a medium or higher level). Then, drive the vehicle according to the following driving conditions to start the regeneration procedure. Continue driving in this way until the instrument panel no longer indicates **【GPF needs to be regenerated】**.

- › Try to drive at a constant speed of more than 80 km/h (50 mph) on well-maintained roads.

Emission control system

2

Driving

- › Avoid stopping and try to keep the engine running.

⚠ CAUTION

- › If the regeneration procedure fail to start despite following the above driving conditions, contact the authorised service centre for parking-based regeneration service.
- › Use only gasoline that complies with national regulatory standards. Avoid the use of fuel additives, etc. Prevent the increase of particulate matter or catalyst poisoning due to fuel quality problems.
- › Regularly change the engine oil using the specified brand and grade.

⚠ WARNING

Observe all traffic laws and regulations during the automatic regeneration procedure.

i NOTICE

Please observe the following recommendations in your daily driving:

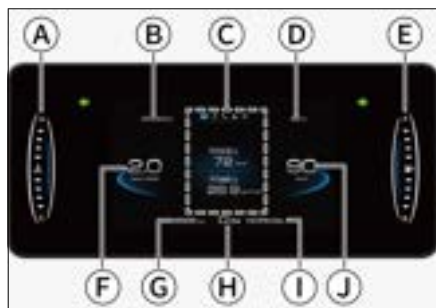
- › Avoid long-term or frequent low-speed and full-throttle running of the engine.
- › Avoid frequent short-distance driving.

Instrument panel (type I)

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Instrument panel overview



CAA1AB1AC00F

- Ⓐ Water temperature gauge
- Ⓑ Time
- Ⓒ Multi-information display
- Ⓓ Exterior temperature
- Ⓔ Fuel gauge
- Ⓕ Engine tachometer
- Ⓖ Total mileage
- Ⓗ Gear position and shift prompts
- Ⓘ Driving mode
- ⓰ Speedometer

NOTICE

The display effects may vary slightly depending on the specific instrument panel theme. Please refer to "Menu setting interface" for setting the instrument panel theme.

Water temperature gauge

It displays the engine coolant temperature.

CAUTION

When the water temperature is close to the red warning zone, slow down your vehicle immediately and find a safe spot to park your vehicle for checks. Restart the engine only after water temperature in the engine has returned to normal.

Multi-information display

You can select different function tabs to switch between contents displayed in the multi-information display. You can view driving data 🚗, audio information 🎵, Bluetooth phone 📞, warning message ⚠️, menu setting ⚙️.

Driving data: it includes mileage, fuel consumption, average vehicle speed, driving time, range, tyre pressure monitoring and other information.

Audio information: it displays the audio information that is currently playing.

Instrument panel (type I)

2

Driving

Bluetooth phone: it displays the information about the currently connected Bluetooth phone.

Warning message: it displays the current warning message.

Menu setting: it includes speed warning setting, theme settings, driving data setting, unit setting, language setting, maintenance mileage, factory setting.

Fuel gauge

It displays the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

i NOTICE

When you drive for an extended time on a slope or around a bend, the fuel displayed may become unstable as fuel moves around in the tank.

Engine tachometer

It shows the current engine speed.

Gear position and shift prompts

It displays the current gear position engaged. When the system recognises the need to upshift or downshift, it will display the upshift symbol ▲ or downshift symbol ▼ to prompt the driver to upshift or downshift.

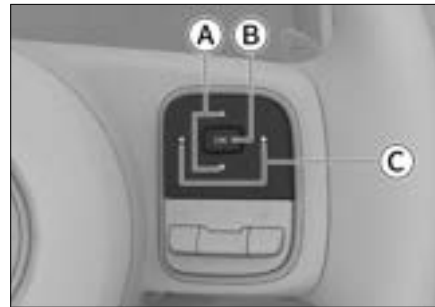
Driving mode

It displays the currently selected driving mode. For details on driving modes, please refer to "Driving mode" and "All-terrain control system". (▷ Page 132) (▷ Page 138)

Speedometer

It displays the current speed of the vehicle.

Steering wheel buttons



Ⓐ Page-turn button

Ⓑ OK button

Ⓒ Select button

Select button

Press the left ◀ or right ▶ button to switch the multi-information display to the driving data interface 🚗, audio information interface 🎵, Bluetooth phone interface 📞, warning message interface ⚠ or menu setting interface ⚙.

Instrument panel (type I)

i NOTICE

If your vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, smart cruise control, and lane assist, please disable these functions or press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel to hide them before proceeding. Otherwise, you won't be able to access the instrument panel interface.

If a previous menu interface is present, press the left ◀ button to return to the previous menu.

Page-turn button

Press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to view the driving data, Bluetooth phone, menu setting or warning messages.

OK button


In the menu setting interface, press the 【OK】 button to enter the next level sub-menu of the currently selected entry, and make the relevant settings.

In the Bluetooth phone interface, press the 【OK】 button to make a call to the selected contact.

When the instrument panel sends out warning messages, press and hold the 【OK】 button to temporarily hide all the current primary warning messages.

In the driving data interface, press and hold the 【OK】 button to reset the values of tripmeter, average fuel consumption, driving time, and average vehicle speed.

Driving data interface


Press the left ◀ or right ▶ button on the steering wheel to switch the options to the driving data interface , and then press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to switch the options of the driving data interface.

Driving data: it includes average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed, tripmeter, driving time, instant fuel, distance per charge and tyre pressure monitoring and so on.

i NOTICE

- › After refuelling, the range will be recalculated.

The actual driving distance will vary depending on driving habits and road conditions.

- › When the low fuel level warning light (yellow)  on the instrument panel illuminates, you should refuel even if the display shows that the vehicle can travel farther.


i NOTICE

The average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed, tripmeter and driving time are displayed on two data interfaces, i.e., A and B.

Instrument panel (type I)

- › In the data interface A, the driving data within the current ignition cycle is displayed, and the power supply mode is turned to the OFF position exceeds 4 hours, the data will automatically reset.
- › In the data interface B, the driving data from the last manual reset to the current time is displayed.
- › Press the **【OK】** button on the steering wheel when the tripmeter, average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed or driving time is shown on the multi-information display to switch between the data interface A and the data interface B.
- › Press and hold the **【OK】** button on the steering wheel when the tripmeter, average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed or driving time is shown on the multi-information display to manually reset the corresponding data on the data interface A or B.

Menu setting interface

Press the left ◀ or right ▶ button on the steering wheel to switch the options to the menu setting interface , and then press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to switch the options of the menu setting interface.

Speed warning setting

Press the **【OK】** button to activate or deactivate the speed warning function.

After activating the function, press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to adjust the speed warning value.

When the driving speed reaches or exceeds the set value, a warning of over-speed will appear on the instrument panel to show an alert to drive safely.

Theme setting

You can set the theme style of the instrument panel.

Driving data setting

You can hide or show some display items on the driving data interface.

Data such as tripmeter, average fuel, journey time and average vehicle speed can be reset by one button.

Unit setting

You can set the pressure unit, temperature unit, mileage and fuel consumption unit.

Language setting

You can set the display language of the instrument panel.

Maintenance mileage

You can check the mileage to the next maintenance.

This information is only used to remind you to maintain your vehicle in time.

Instrument panel (type I)

Factory setting

Some contents of the multi-information display can be reset to the factory setting.

Warning message interface

Press the left ◀ or right ▶ button on the steering wheel to switch the options to the warning message interface ▲, and then press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to view all primary warning messages and secondary warning messages item by item.

Most warning messages on the instrument panel are accompanied by a corresponding warning indicator light. When a warning message is displayed, the corresponding warning indicator light also turns on.

The warning message has priority over the driving data, and warning messages will be prior displayed on the instrument panel.

Please perform all and any operations strictly in accordance with instructions contained in warning messages. If there are no relevant instructions available, please stop the vehicle for checks or contact the authorised service centre for assistance.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not ignore warning messages. Failure to heed warning messages can cause severe damage to the vehicle.
- › If an warning indicator light turns on, please stop the vehicle as soon as possible and contact the authorised service centre, while paying extra care to safe driving.

Primary warning messages

If there are multiple primary warning messages, they will be shown cyclically in turns. After a warning condition is cancelled, the corresponding warning message will not be shown at the same time.

Press and hold the 【OK】 button on the steering wheel for a long time to hide the primary warning messages. At the same time, the primary warning indicator light (red) ▲ on the instrument panel will turn on to remind you that the warning messages have not been cancelled.

Secondary warning messages

Secondary alarm messages will disappear automatically after being shown for a few seconds. The secondary warning indicator light (yellow) ⓘ on the instrument panel will turn on to remind you that the warning messages have not been cancelled.

Instrument panel (type I)

2

Driving

Instrument panel colour setting

You can set the theme colour of the instrument panel through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

【Instrument color changes according to the driving mode】 : turn on this switch, and the system will automatically change the theme colour of the instrument panel when switching to a driving mode.

【Instrument color selection】 : you can manually switch the theme colour of the instrument panel.

i NOTICE

- › To manually switch the theme colour of the instrument panel, turn off the switch for **【Instrument color changes according to the driving mode】**.
- › Due to different configurations, some models do not have a switch for **【Instrument color changes according to the driving mode】**.

Instrument panel (type II)

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Instrument panel overview



548C4D9EA578

- Ⓐ Engine tachometer
- Ⓑ Multi-information display
- Ⓒ Speedometer
- Ⓓ Coolant temperature gauge
- Ⓔ Total mileage
- Ⓕ Gear shifting prompt
- Ⓖ Driving mode
- Ⓗ Fuel gauge

i NOTICE

Instrument panels may be slightly different depending on vehicles. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Engine tachometer

It shows the current engine speed.

Multi-information display

You can select different function tabs to switch between contents displayed in the multi-information display. You can view 🚗 driving data, ⚙️ menu setting, and ⚠️ warning message.

Driving data: it includes mileage, fuel consumption, average vehicle speed, driving time, range, tyre pressure monitoring and other information.

Menu setting: it includes speed warning setting, driving data setting, pressure unit, temperature unit, mileage and fuel consumption units, language setting, maintenance mileage, factory setting.

Warning message: it displays the current warning message.

Gear shifting prompt

When the system recognises the need to upshift or downshift, it will display the upshift symbol ▲ or the downshift symbol ▼ to prompt the driver to upshift or downshift.

Instrument panel (type II)

Driving mode

It displays the currently selected driving mode. For driving modes, please refer to "4WD system".(> Page 144)

Speedometer

It displays the current speed of the vehicle.

Coolant temperature gauge

It displays the engine coolant temperature.

⚠ CAUTION

When the coolant temperature is close to the red warning zone, slow down your vehicle immediately and find a safe spot to park your vehicle for checks. Restart the engine only after coolant temperature in the engine has returned to normal.

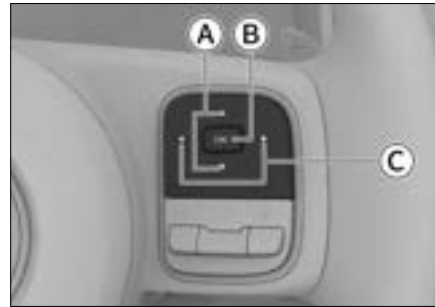
Fuel gauge

It displays the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

i NOTICE

When you drive for an extended time on a slope or around a bend, the fuel displayed may become unstable as fuel moves around in the tank.

Steering wheel buttons



Ⓐ Page-turn button

Ⓑ OK button

Ⓒ Select button

Select button

Press the left ◀ or right ▶ button to switch the multi-information display to the driving data interface 🚗, the menu settings interface ⚙ or the warning message interface ⚠.

If a previous menu interface is present, press the left ◀ button to return to the previous menu.

Page-turn button

Press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to view various information in the driving data interface, the menu settings interface, or the warning message interface.


OK button

In the menu setting interface, press the **【OK】** button to enter the next level sub-menu of the currently selected entry, and make the relevant settings.

Instrument panel (type II)


When the instrument panel sends out warning messages, press and hold the **【OK】** button to temporarily hide all the current primary warning messages. In the driving data interface, press and hold the **【OK】** button to reset the values of tripmeter, average fuel consumption, driving time, and average vehicle speed.

Driving data interface

Press the left ◀ or right ▶ button on the steering wheel to switch the options to the driving data interface , and then press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to switch the options of the driving data interface.

Driving data: it includes average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed, tripmeter, driving time, instant fuel, range and tyre pressure monitoring and so on.

NOTICE

- › After refuelling, the range will be recalculated.
The actual driving distance will vary depending on driving habits and road conditions.
- › When the low fuel level warning light (yellow)  on the instrument panel illuminates, you should refuel even if the display shows that the vehicle can travel farther.

NOTICE

The average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed, tripmeter and driving time are displayed on two data interfaces A and B.

- › In the data interface A, the driving data within the current ignition cycle is displayed, and the power supply mode is turned to the OFF position exceeds 4 hours, the data will automatically reset.
- › In the data interface B, the driving data from the last manual reset to the current time is displayed.
- › Press the **【OK】** button on the steering wheel when the tripmeter, average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed or driving time is shown on the multi-information display to switch between the data interface A and the data interface B.
- › Press and hold the **【OK】** button on the steering wheel when the tripmeter, average fuel consumption, average vehicle speed or driving time is shown on the multi-information display to manually reset the corresponding data on the data interface A or B.

Instrument panel (type II)

2

Driving

Menu setting interface

Press the left ◀ or right ▶ button on the steering wheel to switch the options to the menu setting interface ⚙, and then press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to switch the options of the menu setting interface.

Speed warning setting

Press the 【OK】 button to activate or deactivate the speed warning function. After activating the function, press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to adjust the speed warning value.

When the driving speed reaches or exceeds the set value, a warning of over-speed will appear on the instrument panel to show an alert to drive safely.

Driving data setting

You can hide or show some display items on the driving data interface.

Data such as tripmeter, average fuel, journey time and average vehicle speed can be reset by one button.

Pressure unit

The pressure unit can be set.

Temperature unit

The temperature unit can be set.

Mileage & fuel consumption units

The mileage & fuel consumption units can be set.

Language setting

You can set the display language of the instrument panel.

Maintenance mileage

You can check the mileage to the next maintenance.

This information is only used to remind you to maintain your vehicle in time.

Factory setting

Some contents of the multi-information display can be reset to the factory setting.

Warning message interface

Press the left ◀ or right ▶ button on the steering wheel to switch the options to the warning message interface ▲, and then press the up ▲ or down ▼ button to view all primary warning messages and secondary warning messages item by item.

Most warning messages on the instrument panel are accompanied by a corresponding warning indicator light. When a warning message is displayed, the corresponding warning indicator light also turns on.

The warning message has priority over the driving data, and warning messages will be first displayed on the instrument panel.

Instrument panel (type II)


Please perform all and any operations strictly in accordance with instructions contained in warning messages. If there are no relevant instructions available, please stop the vehicle for checks or contact the authorised service centre for assistance.

CAUTION


- › Do not ignore warning messages. Failure to heed warning messages can cause severe damage to the vehicle.
- › If an warning indicator light turns on, please stop the vehicle as soon as possible and contact the authorised service centre, while paying extra care to safe driving.

Primary warning messages

If there are multiple primary warning messages, they will be shown cyclically in turns. After a warning condition is cancelled, the corresponding warning message will not be shown at the same time.

Press and hold the **【OK】** button on the steering wheel for a long time to hide the primary warning messages. At the same time, the primary warning indicator light (red)  on the instrument panel will turn on to remind you that the warning messages have not been cancelled.

Secondary warning messages

Secondary alarm messages will disappear automatically after being shown for a few seconds. The secondary warning indicator light (yellow)  on the instrument panel will turn on to remind you that the warning messages have not been cancelled.

Instrument panel colour setting

You can set the background colour of the multi-information display of the instrument panel through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Body】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

【Instrument panel colour changing with driving mode】 : when this switch is activated, the system will automatically change the background colour of the multi-information display of the instrument panel after you switch to a driving mode.

【Instrument panel colour selection】 : you can manually switch between background colours of the multi-information display of the instrument panel.

NOTICE

- › To manually switch between background colours of the multi-information display the instrument panel, deactivate the switch for **【Instrument panel colour changing with driving mode】** .
- › Due to different configurations,

Instrument panel (type II)

some models do not have a switch for **【Instrument panel colour changing with driving mode】** .

2

Driving

Instrument panel indicator lights

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Instrument panel indicator lights

NOTICE

- › When the power supply is switched to the ON mode, some indicator lights and warning lights will go on for a short time. This indicates that the system is doing self-test and this is normal.
- › Depending on the specific vehicle model configuration, not all the indicator lights and warning lights on the instrument panel will go on.



Primary warning indicator light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle currently has primary warning messages and that at least one primary warning message is manually hidden.

WARNING

Do not ignore any warning messages. Otherwise, serious damage to the vehicle or an accident may be caused.

NOTICE

You can check all current warning messages of the vehicle on the warning interface of the instrument panel.



Rear side assist system fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the rear side assist system is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use the rear side assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Lane keep assist fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the lane keep assist function is faulty. In this case, please deactivate the function, and go to the authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Lane departure warning fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the lane departure warning function is malfunctioning. In this case, deactivate the lane departure warning function, and go to the authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.



Oil water separation indicator light

This applies to vehicles equipped with a diesel engine. If this red light turns on, it indicates that the amount of water in the fuel-water separator exceeds the standard value. In this case, contact the authorised service centre to drain the water as soon as possible.



Transmission overheat warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high. If this light turns on after starting the vehicle, stop in a safe spot as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle to cool the transmission. If the light remains on after the above treatments, contact the authorised service centre.



Airbag fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the airbag system is malfunctioning. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.



Low engine oil pressure warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the engine oil is insufficient. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible and shut down the engine. Otherwise, the engine parts may be seriously damaged. Check the oil level after a few minutes and add engine oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal and the light is always on, contact the authorised service centre.



Battery charging system warning light

If this red light turns on after the vehicle is started, it indicates that the charging system is malfunctioning. Please immediately park the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre.

Instrument panel indicator lights



High engine coolant temperature warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the coolant temperature of the engine cooling system is excessively high. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection and repair. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.



Steering assist fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the steering assist function does not work.



Off-road cruise fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the off-road cruise control is malfunctioning. In this case, please turn it off and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection.



Smart cruise control fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the smart cruise control function is malfunctioning. In this case, turn off the cruise assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection.



Adaptive cruise control fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is malfunctioning. In this case, turn off the cruise assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection.



Brake system fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the brake fluid level is too low or that the braking force distribution system is malfunctioning.

In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe spot and contact the authorised service centre. Otherwise, a serious accident may be caused.



Parking brake indicator light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the parking brake is applied.

If this red light flashes, it indicates that the brake disk temperature is too high or that the pavement slope is too large, having a risk of rolling. At this moment, depress the brake pedal and park the vehicle on a smooth path as soon as possible.

Instrument panel indicator lights

2

Driving



Door open warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the door is open or not fully closed.



Unfastened seat belt warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the driver, the front passenger or the rear passengers haven't fastened the seat belt.



Electric power steering fault warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the electric power steering system is malfunctioning and the assisted power no longer exists. In this case, park the vehicle in a safe spot and turn off the vehicle, and then restart the vehicle several minutes later. If the light remains on, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



120 km/h overspeed warning light

If this red light turns on, it indicates that the speed is over 120 km/h.



Secondary warning indicator light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that there are secondary warning messages.

⚠ WARNING

Do not ignore any warning messages. Otherwise, serious damage to the vehicle or an accident may be caused.

i NOTICE

› The secondary warning messages will automatically hide after being displayed on the multi-information display of the instrument panel for a few seconds.

Instrument panel indicator lights

› You can check all current warning messages of the vehicle on the warning interface of the instrument panel.



Auto high beam fault warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the auto high beam function is malfunctioning. In this case, manually turn on the high beam or low beam headlights as needed, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Rear fog light indicator light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the rear fog lights are on.



Parking brake fault warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the electronic parking brake system is malfunctioning.



Auto vehicle hold standby indicator light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is activated and in standby status.



Anti-lock braking system fault warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the anti-lock braking system is malfunctioning. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

If this light turns on, it indicates that the vehicle can still be braked normally although the anti-lock function is not available.



Electronic stability control system warning light

If this yellow light flashes, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is working. If this light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is malfunctioning.



Electronic stability control off indicator light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the electronic stability control system is deactivated.



Hill descent control indicator light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the hill descent control system is activated.

If this yellow light flashes, it indicates that the hill descent control system is working.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Low fuel level warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the fuel is insufficient.

On slopes or during turning, the light may go on prematurely due to unstable fuel levels inside the fuel tank.

⚠ CAUTION

Never drive the vehicle when the remaining fuel level is extremely low. Otherwise, the emission control system and power system may be damaged due to running out of the fuel.



Tyre pressure monitoring system warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the tyre pressure is too low or the temperature is too high. At this time, stop the vehicle for inspections and contact the authorised service centre.

If this yellow flashes for a period of time and turns on, accompanied by several voice prompts, it indicates that the tyre pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning.

⚠ WARNING

If this light turns on, it indicates that you should avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and drive and park the vehicle in a safe spot as soon as possible for inspection.

Driving a vehicle when the tyre pressure is too low or the tyre temperature is too high will increase the possibility of tyre breakdown, and may even cause serious damage to the vehicle or lead to an accident.



Engine system fault warning light

If the yellow light turns on after the vehicle is started, it indicates that the engine has a fault that affects emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.

i NOTICE

If the fuel tank cover is not installed in place, the light may be on.

Instrument panel indicator lights



Engine maintenance warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the engine has a fault not related to emissions. In this case, contact the authorised service centre.



Engine warm-up indicator light

This applies to vehicles equipped with a diesel engine.

In cold environments, this yellow light turns on when the engine temperature is lower than the standard value. When the glow plug is fully warmed up, it turns off, indicating that the engine can be started. The warm-up time varies depending on the temperature of the engine and coolant.

In driving process, the yellow light flashes, indicating that the engine electronic control system is malfunctioning. In this case, please contact the authorised service centre immediately.



Urea indicator light

If this light turns on or flashes, it indicates that there are problems with the engine in AdBlue control system (such as lack of AdBlue solution, failures, etc.). In this case, perform operations or contact the authorised service centre according to the prompt on the instrument panel interface.



Rear axle differential lock fault warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the rear axle differential lock is malfunctioning. Go to the authorised service centre in time for inspection and repair.



Front axle differential lock fault warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the front axle differential lock is malfunctioning. Go to the authorised service centre in time for inspection and repair.



Front collision warning fault warning light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the front collision assist function is malfunctioning. In this case, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.

Instrument panel indicator lights

2

Driving



Front collision warning off indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the front collision assist function is deactivated.



Rear side assist system limited warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the sensor of the rear side assist system is blocked. In this case, check for objects covering the inner/outer surface of both sides of the rear bumper. If any, remove them right away.



Electric power steering fault warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the power steering effect is reduced, so more force is required to operate the steering wheel. If this light remains on after the vehicle is restarted or after a short running distance, go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Emergency lane keeping off indicator light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the emergency lane keeping function is deactivated.



Lane keeping assist system fault warning light

If this yellow light turns on, it indicates that the lane keeping assist system is malfunctioning. In this case, do not use the functions of the lane keeping assist system, and go to the authorised service centre as soon as possible for inspection and repair.



Left turn signal indicator light

When the left turn signal light is on, the left turn signal indicator light will flash.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn signal indicator lights and all exterior turn signal lights will flash together.

i NOTICE

When the turn signal indicator light flashes quickly, it usually means that the turn signal light is damaged. Replace it as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.



Right turn signal indicator light

When the right turn signal light is on, the right turn signal indicator light will flash.

Instrument panel indicator lights

When the hazard warning lights are on, the turn signal indicator lights and all exterior turn signal lights will flash together.

NOTICE

When the turn signal indicator light flashes quickly, it usually means that the turn signal light is damaged. Replace it as soon as possible. Otherwise, other drivers will not see the signal you send.



Trailer steering indicator light

After connection with the power socket of the trailer, this green indicator light and the turn signal indicator light will flash at the same frequency.



Main light knob Indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the main light knob is on.



Position light indicator light

If this light turns on, it indicates that the front and rear position lights and the license plate lights are on.



Auto high beam work indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the auto high beam function is activated.



Front fog light indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the front fog lights are on.



Auto vehicle hold work indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the auto vehicle hold function is activated and in working status.



Cruise control indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the cruise control system is activated.



Adaptive cruise control work indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is activated and the cruising speed is successfully set up.



Smart cruise control work indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the smart cruise control function is activated and the cruising speed is successfully set up.



Off-road cruise control work indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the off-road cruise control is activated and is in working status.

Instrument panel indicator lights

2

Driving



Steering assist work indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the steering assist function is in working status.



Rear axle differential lock indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the rear axle differential lock is locked successfully.



Front axle differential lock indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the front axle differential lock is locked successfully.



Lane departure warning work indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the lane departure warning function is activated.



Lane keep assist work indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the lane keeping function is activated and works normally.



Lane change assist indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the doubling assistance function is activated.



Rear crossing alert indicator light

If this green light turns on, it indicates that the reverse side warning function is activated.



High beam indicator light

If this blue light turns on, it indicates that the high beam headlights are on.



Adaptive cruise control standby indicator light

If this white light turns on, it indicates that the adaptive cruise control function is activated and in standby status.



Smart cruise control standby indicator light

If this white light turns on, it indicates that the smart cruise control function is activated and in standby status.



Off-road cruise control standby indicator light

If this white light turns on, it indicates that the off-road cruise control is activated and in standby status.



Steering assist standby indicator light

If this white light turns on, it indicates that the steering assist function is activated and in standby status.



3

Audiovisual system

Safety prompts 230

Panel introduction..... 232

Function introduction 235

Safety prompts

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

- › Ensure that your use of any of the system's features does not distract you and thereby interfere with safe driving. Your most important responsibility while driving is for the safety of the drive. You must obey all traffic regulations.
- › During driving, the driver is not allowed to operate the system and must keep the volume of the system at an appropriate level, so as not to affect driving safety due to lack of concentration.
- › This system may only be used in areas permitted by law. Some national or local regulations may prohibit use of the display screen within the driver's field of view.
- › Do not disassemble or modify the system.

- › When a failure occurs, stop using the system and contact authorised service centre. Do not try to repair the system by yourself.

About the use

- › For safety reasons, some functions may not be activated when the vehicle starts to move.
- › Do not press the buttons or knobs on the panel firmly.
- › Do not press the screen forcefully or scratch it with sharp objects.
- › When cleaning the display screen, do not use abrasive wipers or detergent containing organic solvent.
- › Do not strike the screen when image jitter occurs in process of operation.

About the radio

When driving the car, you may not find any radio stations, or you may hear noises or receive different radio signals with same frequency, depending on the environment such as road conditions, weather, etc.

About USB storage devices

Since there are various types of USB storage devices, this system may not be compatible with all USB storage devices.

About Bluetooth

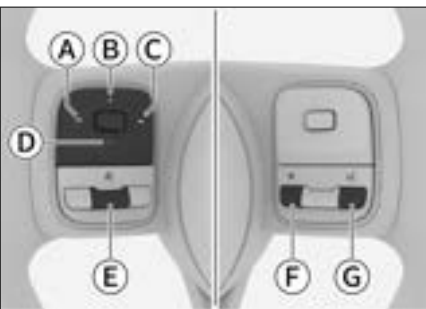
- › Since there are a great number of smartphone brands with different functions, this system may not be compatible with all the smartphones.
- › If you cannot search and find the Bluetooth device name of this system during Bluetooth pairing, restart the Bluetooth on the smartphone and search it again.
- › If Bluetooth cannot be connected, delete the paired device on the smartphone, and pair it again.
- › If Bluetooth does not function properly when in use, disconnect the Bluetooth and reconnect it.

Panel introduction

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Steering wheel buttons



- Ⓐ Skip forward button
- Ⓑ Volume+ button
- Ⓒ Skip backward button
- Ⓓ Volume- button
- Ⓔ Bluetooth phone button
- Ⓕ Custom button
- Ⓖ Voice button

Skip forward button

Press the skip forward button **⏮** to switch to the previous track/radio station.

Skip backward button

Press the skip backward button **⏭** to switch to the next track/radio station.

Volume+ button

Press the volume **【+】** button to increase the volume.

Volume- button

Press the volume **【-】** button to decrease the volume.

Bluetooth phone button

When no call comes in, press the Bluetooth phone button **📞** to access the Bluetooth phone interface.

When there is an incoming call, press the Bluetooth phone button **📞** to answer the call, and press and hold the button to reject the call.

During the call, press the Bluetooth phone button **📞** to hang up the phone.


Custom button


Press the custom button **✳** to execute the well set functions. Press and hold the button and enter the button function setting interface so that the customised function can be set.

Voice button

Press the voice button **🗣** to enable or disable the voice assistant provided with this vehicle.

Panel introduction

When the mobile phone (Apple CarPlay or Android Auto) is connected, press and hold the voice button  to activate or deactivate the phone mobile voice assistant.

When the mobile phone is not connected, press and hold the voice button  to enter the Bluetooth setting interface.

External devices

USB port

The USB port is located in the front of the auxiliary instrument panel, as shown in the figure.

Type I




E551C5A838C8

Type II



D74B3534B7E3

The USB port with the icon  is the data transmission port.

i NOTICE

- › Ensure a stable connection between the external device and the input port.
- › Do not insert or remove the device during playback to avoid problems like the system failure to recognize the device normally.

Media specifications

This system supports the following media specifications:

| Media | Specifications |
|-----------|--|
| USB | USB devices with partition format FAT32, NTFS |
| Bluetooth | Bluetooth 5.1+EDR, version 1.6 AVRCP and version 1.3 A2DP Bluetooth audio device |

File format

This system supports the following file formats:

| File | Format |
|-------|--|
| Audio | MP3, WMA, AAC, AAC PLUS, WAV/WAVE, FLAC, APE, OGG, and other free audio formats supported by Android |
| Video | MP4, M4V, MOV, 3GP, WMV, AVI, MPEG, MKV, WebM, and other free video formats supported by Android |

Panel introduction

i NOTICE

Even files in formats supported by this system may not be normally played due to file characteristics (such as file quality, bit rate, frame rate, resolution, compression quality, or corruption), playback environment and storage devices.






Function introduction





Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Multimedia display screen status bar

The status bar icons are displayed at the top of the multimedia display screen to display each function status. The status bar icons will change in real time according to functional characteristics, signal intensity, connection status, switch status, etc.


| Icon | Function status |
|---|-------------------------------|
|  | USB abnormal |
|  | USB connected |
|  | Wireless charging standby |
|  | Wireless charging in progress |
|  | Wireless charging completed |

| Icon | Function status |
|---|-------------------------|
| 10:15 | Time display |
|  | Mute mode on |
|  | Sound mode on |
|  | Bluetooth not connected |
|  | Bluetooth connected |

Function introduction

Home and menu interface

Home interface

Touch the home button  to enter the home interface.



AB6CAD1F41D6

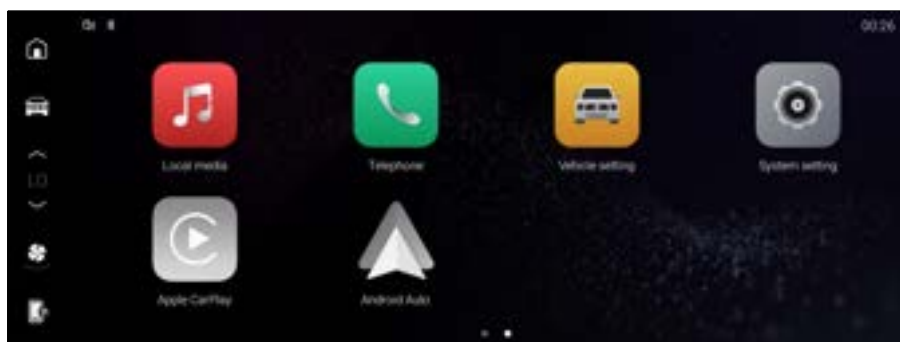
It displays common application cards. Touch the application card non-button area to enter the corresponding application.

The application card will display different function buttons according to the application status, and touch these buttons to achieve corresponding functions.

For example, touch the play button  on the local media to continue playing.

Menu interface

In the home interface, slide to the left on the screen to access the menu interface.



AEE1D413D896


NOTICE


The applications displayed on the menu interface may vary, including additions or deletions. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

Function introduction


Permanent sidebar

The permanent sidebar is displayed on the left side of the interface.

Touch the home button  to enter the home interface.

Touch the vehicle setting button  to enter the vehicle setting interface.

Touch the A/C button  to enter the A/C setting interface and set the A/C system.

When the mobile phone is not connected, touch the mobile phone interaction button  to enter the Bluetooth setting interface. If the mobile phone is connected, the corresponding mobile phone interaction icon is displayed here. Touch the icon to switch to the corresponding mobile phone interaction interface.

NOTICE

The permanent sidebar for a right-hand drive model is displayed on the right side of the interface.

Shortcut panel



In most interfaces, sliding down from the top of the screen will call up the shortcut panel.








3986CE85FC4B

System setting

The system setting buttons are displayed on the left side of the shortcut panel.

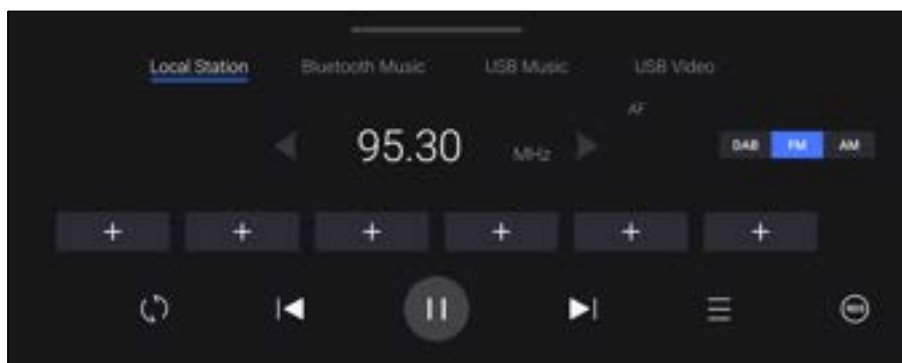
- › Navigation volume: to use the navigation function of mobile phone internetworking, you can adjust the navigation volume. Touch the navigation mute button  to activate or deactivate the navigation mute function.
- › Media volume: slide the slider to adjust the multimedia volume. Touch the media mute button  to activate or deactivate the media mute function.

Function introduction

- › Brightness adjustment: slide the slider to adjust the screen brightness. Touch the automatic brightness button  to activate or deactivate the automatic adjustment function of the screen brightness.
- › Touch the Bluetooth button  to turn on or off the system Bluetooth.
- › Touch the screen off button  to turn off the screen display. Touch anywhere on the screen at this time to light up the screen.
- › Touch the steering wheel assist button  to switch the steering wheel assist mode.
- › Touch the wireless charging button  to activate or deactivate the wireless charging function.

Local media


In the menu interface, touch **【Local media】** to access the local media interface which includes local station, Bluetooth music, USB music and USB video.



26AF14AF1D4B

Local station

In the local media interface, touch the **【Local radio】** button on the top to access the local radio interface.

- › Touch the **【FM】** button to access FM. Touch the **【AM】** button to access AM. Touch the **【DAB】** button to access DAB.
- › Touch the button **+** to favourite the current radio station, and the frequency of the radio station will be displayed after it is favourited. Touch and hold this button to delete this favourite station.
- › Touch the update button  to scan for radio stations and update the list of radio stations.

Function introduction

3

Audiovisual system

- › Touch the skip forward **I◀** or skip backward **▶I** button to switch between active stations.
- › Touch the pause button **II** to pause the play, and touch the play button **▶** to resume the play.
- › Touch the list button **≡** to access the station list interface, displaying the updated station list of the current band.
- › Touch the **【RDS】** button to bring up the RDS setting interface. After activating the RDS function, you can enable or disable the AF, TA, REG, EON, and PTY functions.

i NOTICE

When driving the vehicle, you may not find any radio stations, or you may hear noises or receive different radio signals with same frequency, depending on the environment such as road conditions, weather, etc.

Bluetooth music

In the local media interface, touch the **【Bluetooth music】** button on the top to access the Bluetooth music interface.

If Bluetooth is not connected, please pair and connect with Bluetooth first. If the Bluetooth music cannot play automatically, please turn on the player on the mobile phone before playing it.

- › Touch the skip forward **I◀** or skip backward **▶I** button to switch between tracks.
- › Touch the pause button **II** to pause the play, and touch the play button **▶** to resume the play.

i NOTICE

- › Available functions of Bluetooth audio playback may vary due to different Bluetooth audio protocol versions supported by Bluetooth devices.
- › When playing the Bluetooth music, please use your mobile phone's player. If you use a downloaded player, an abnormal situation may occur.

USB music

In the local media interface, touch the **【USB music】** button on the top to access the USB music interface. When using the USB music, please connect the USB device with media to on-board USB port (it is in the front of the auxiliary instrument panel).

Function introduction

USB Video

In the local media interface, touch the **【USB video】** on the top to access the USB video list interface. When using the USB video, please connect the USB device with media to on-board USB port (it is in the front of the auxiliary instrument panel).

i NOTICE


For driving safety, watching the video during driving will pop up a driving warning prompt. You can activate or deactivate this function through the **【System setting】** → **【Display】** → **【Driving video】** interface.

Bluetooth phone

Bluetooth phone interface

In the home interface, touch **【Telephone】** to access the Bluetooth phone interface. If a Bluetooth device is not connected, go to **【System setting】** → **【Bluetooth】** to pair and connect the Bluetooth device.

i NOTICE

- › Since there are a great number of mobile brands with different functions, this system may not be compatible with all mobiles.
 - › If you cannot search and find the Bluetooth device name of this system during Bluetooth pairing, restart the Bluetooth on your mobile and search for it again.
 - › If Bluetooth cannot be connected, delete the paired device on the mobile, and pair it again.
 - › If Bluetooth functionality is abnormal during use, disconnect it and then reconnect.
-
- › After inputting the telephone number, touch the dial button  to make a call.
 - › Touch the **【Recents】** button to display the recents such as dialled, received and missed. Touch any contact record in the list to make a phone call.
 - › Touch the **【Contacts】** button to display the contact list after synchronisation. Touch a contact or a phone number in the list to make a phone call.
 - › Touch the **【Messages】** button to access the messages interface. You can view the messages of the currently connected device.



Function introduction

i NOTICE

- › If you want to use contacts, recents and message function, permission should be granted on the paired and connected phone.
- › The message function is not supported by certain phones due to permission restrictions of systems.
- › After the paired Bluetooth device through **【System setting】** → **【Bluetooth】** is deleted, the communication information saved in the vehicle will be deleted at the same time.





Incoming call

When there is an incoming call, the incoming call interface pops up.

- › Touch the answer button  to answer the incoming call.
- › Touch the hang up button  to end the call.

Calling

When in calling, the interface will be switched to call interface.

- › Touch the hang up button  to end the call.
- › Touch the microphone button  to turn on or off the vehicle microphone. If this button turns on, it indicates that the on-board microphone is off.
- › Touch the private/hands-free button  to access the private mode or the hands-free mode. If this button turns on, it indicates that the private mode is enabled.
Private mode: calling through the phone connected to the Bluetooth of the system
Hands-free mode: calling through the on-board speaker or microphone
- › Touching the pad button  can enable or disable the dial pad.

Mobile phone interaction

Function introduction


The mobile phone function can project some mobile phone applications to the on-board multimedia display screen for display and control, mainly including navigation, music, telephone, etc. This can ensure you have a safer and more convenient driving experience.

Function introduction

i NOTICE


- › Due to the different compatibilities of mobile phone systems and versions, some iPhones may not support the Apple CarPlay function.
- › If the Android Auto app is not installed on your Android phone, download the latest app from the Google Play App Store and install it. Due to the different compatibilities of mobile phone systems and versions, some Android phones may not support the Android Auto function.

Mobile phone interaction portal

Touch the home button  on the sidebar to enter the home interface, where you can see Apple CarPlay and Android Auto icons.

- › If Apple CarPlay is not connected, Apple CarPlay app icon is grey. Touch this icon can to access the device management interface. If Apple CarPlay is connected, Apple CarPlay application icon will illuminate. Touch this icon to enter Apple CarPlay interface.
- › If Android Auto is not connected, Android Auto application icon is grey. Touch this icon and follow the prompts to access the device management interface. If the Android Auto is connected, the Android Auto application icon will illuminate. Touch this icon to enter the Android Auto interface.

Wired connection

Use the mobile phone USB cable to connect the mobile phone with the on-board USB port (with , and then follow the prompts to use the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Disconnect the USB cable directly to exit the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

i NOTICE

It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile phone to ensure successful connection.

Apple CarPlay wireless connection

1. Activate Bluetooth through **【System setting】** → **【Bluetooth】** on the multimedia display screen.
2. Activate Bluetooth and WIFI switches of your mobile phone.

Function introduction

3. Touch Apple CarPlay to search for your iPhone and connect it through **【System setting】** → **【Device management】** on the multimedia display screen.
4. Follow the prompts on the multimedia display screen and the mobile phone to complete the connection of Apple CarPlay.

i NOTICE

You can disconnect Apple CarPlay through **【System setting】** → **【Device management】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

Android Auto wireless connection

1. Activate Bluetooth through **【System setting】** → **【Bluetooth】** on the multimedia display screen.
2. Activate Bluetooth switch of your mobile phone.
3. Touch the Android Auto to search for your Android phone and connect it through **【System setting】** → **【Device management】** on the multimedia display screen.
4. Follow the prompts on the multimedia display screen and the mobile phone to complete the connection of Android Auto.

i NOTICE

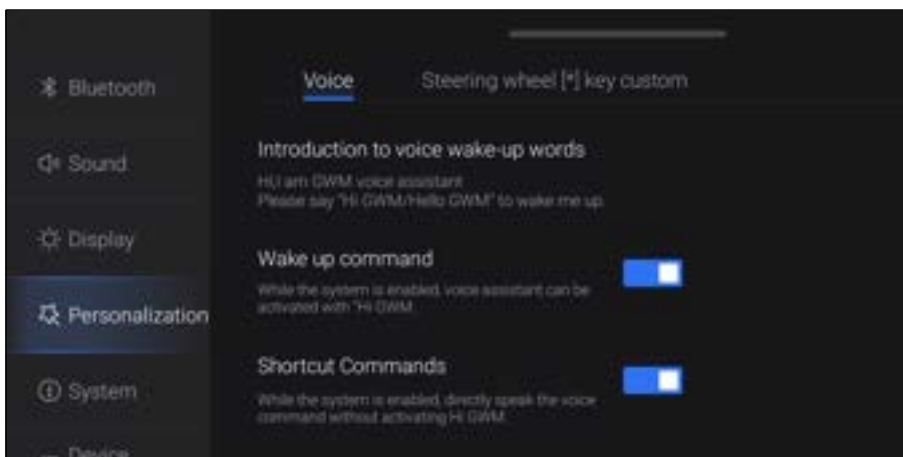
- › You can disconnect your Android Auto through **【System setting】** → **【Device management】** on the multimedia display screen.
- › Before connecting Android Auto, please confirm that the wireless connection function in the developer mode of Android phone is activated. Otherwise, the connection will fail.

Voice control

Voice settings


You can set the voice assistant function through the **【System setting】** → **【Personalization】** → **【Voice】** menu interface.

Function introduction



- › **【Introduction to voice wake-up words】** : you can view the method of waking up the voice assistant.
- › **【Voice wake-up】** : after activating the function, you can wake up the voice assistant through the “wake-up word”.
- › **【Shortcut command】** : after activating the function, you can directly say some commands without waking up the voice assistant.
- › **【Voice assistant's capabilities】** : you can view the voice commands supported by the voice assistant, including shortcut commands and regular commands.

The voice assistant can recognise and execute voice commands to control vehicle functions quickly and improve operation convenience. There are several ways to activate the voice control:

- › Press the voice button  on the steering wheel.
- › Voice wake-up: say the wake-up word, such as "Hi, GWM" or “Hello, GWM”.

WARNING

When you control the vehicle using the voice assistant, pay attention to the surroundings and personal safety to avoid pinch, collisions and other severe accidents.

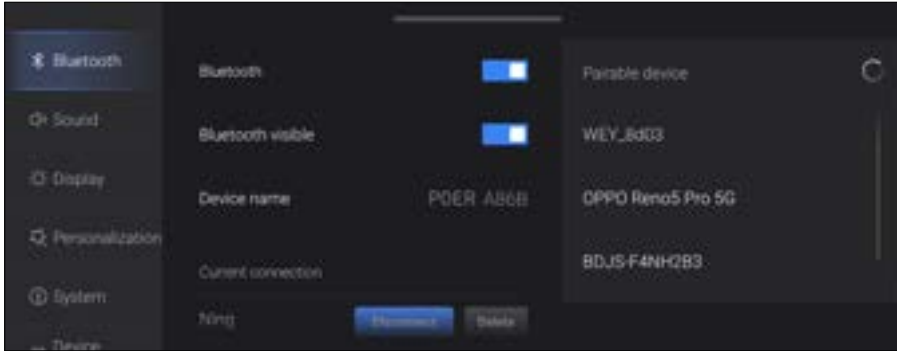
NOTICE

The success rate of voice recognition will be affected by environmental noise, usage habits, pronunciation and other factors. The specific use effect is subject to the actual vehicle environment.

Function introduction

System setting

In the menu interface, touch the **【System settings】** button to switch to the system settings interface.



Bluetooth setting

- › **【Bluetooth】** : you can touch the switch to turn on or off the Bluetooth.
- › **【Bluetooth Visible】** : after the function is enabled, other devices are allowed to check the Bluetooth of the system and perform pairing connection.
- › **【Device name】** : it displays the device name of the system.
- › **【Current connection】** : it displays the currently connected Bluetooth devices, and you can disconnect or delete the connected devices.
- › **【Pairing history】** : it displays the paired Bluetooth devices. You can connect or delete connected devices.

System sound

- › **【System sound】** : you can adjust the volume of navigation, multimedia, call, etc., set the vehicle alarm, and speed volume compensation.
- › **【Sound effect setting】** : you can activate or deactivate the Dts sound effect. You can select or set the best locatzer, and adjust the equalizer and sound field.

Display settings

- › **【Brightness mode】** : after **【Automatic】** is selected, the system will automatically switch the screen brightness according to the ambient brightness and position lights changes. Select **【Manual】** , and you can adjust the screen brightness manually.



Function introduction

- › **【Instrument brightness control】** : you can adjust the instrument brightness manually.
- › **【Central control screen brightness adjustment】** : you can adjust the brightness of the multimedia display manually.
- › **【Time synchronization】** : after **【Automatic】** is selected, the time automatically synchronise. Select **【Manual】** , and you can set the time zone and time manually.
- › **【System】** : you can select the system time display as 12-hour or 24-hour format.
- › **【Driving video】** : you can choose to turn off or set the speed. For driving safety, watch the video during driving, and a driving warning message will pop up when the set speed is exceeded.
- › **【Language setting】** : you can set the language of the multimedia display.

Personalized setting

- › **【Voice】** : you can set up a voice assistant. Please refer to "Voice assistant" for details.(▷ Page 243)
- › **【Steering wheel [*] key customization】** : you can set the function of the custom button * on the steering wheel.

System setting

- › **【Version】** : you can view the device name and software version of this system.
- › **【Quick system start】** : after this function is activated, switch the power supply switch to ON mode within 72 hours, and the multimedia will directly display the operation interface.
- › **【Reset system settings】** : reset all system settings to default values.
- › **【Restore factory settings】** : restore all settings (system setting and vehicle setting) to default values. All local files, application data, personal files, etc. will be deleted.

i NOTICE

About resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings:

- › During the process of resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings, the interface cannot be operated.
- › The operations of resetting system settings and restoring to factory settings cannot be cancelled.
- › Conditions for restoring to factory settings: the power supply is in ON mode, and the P gear position is engaged and the vehicle is stationary.



Function introduction

Device management

- › Apple CarPlay: you can search, connect, disconnect, and delete iPhones.
- › Android Auto: you can search, connect, disconnect, and delete Android phones.



4

Safety

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Seat belts | 250 |
| Airbags | 255 |
| Child restraint system..... | 262 |
| Vehicle anti-theft system..... | 268 |
| Fuel shutoff system..... | 269 |
| Event data recorder | 270 |

Seat belts

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips

- › The shoulder belt must not hang on the neck area, or pass under the arm-pit area.
- › The lap belt must be secured as firmly as possible around the lower part of the hip bone.
- › Each seat belt can only be used by one person. More than one person (including children) must not share the same seat belt.

If more than two people wear the same seat belt, when the vehicle is involved in a collision, not only the seat belt can not disperse the impact, but there is a danger of two people colliding with each other.

- › The seat belt shall not be twisted or slack.
- › Do not wrap the seat belt around objects with sharp corners, or it may be damaged during an accident.

- › Never use a seat belt that has undergone strong impact from an accident or which is otherwise damaged.
- › Do not remove, disassemble or alter seat belts.
- › Do not use the seat belt with foreign object in the buckle.
- › We suggest that when you use the seat belt, you shall keep your seat belt clean. Oil and water-based materials such as soil, oil stain, water, beverage, food residue, shall not be attached to the seat belt so as to ensure that it can be pulled out and retracted smoothly.
- › Do not use organic substances, such as benzene or gasoline, to clean the seat belts, and do not bleach or dye them.
- › Children must not play with the seat belt.

If a child accidentally wraps the seat belt around his or her neck while playing with the seat belt, he/she may not be able to pull the seat belt, resulting in serious injury or even death. In this case, if the locking tab of seat belt cannot be released, use a pair of scissors to cut the seat belt.

- › Inside seat belt design is mainly based on adult size, so please install proper child restraint system for children.

Seat belts

When the seat belt is being used correctly, if the belt is in contact with the child's neck or jaw area or slack to the hip, please switch to a child seat instead.

If the child is old enough to use inside seat belt, he (she) shall wear the belt properly.

› Precautions for pregnant women

We strongly suggest that you use the seat belt. You can also get effective advice by consulting with your doctor. The recommended way of wearing the seat belt for pregnant women is fundamentally the same as for other passengers. However, such passengers should take note of the following:

- 1) The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible in the abdomen area, below the bulge of the belly.
- 2) The shoulder belt should run over the passenger's shoulder, over the chest area but avoid the passenger's abdomen area.

If the seat belt is worn incorrectly, during emergency braking or collisions, the seat belt may tighten over the abdomen area, causing injury or even death to the pregnant mother and unborn child.

› We strongly recommend that passengers who are ill or disabled use the seat belt. You can also get effective advice by consulting with your doctor.

- › When the seat belt is not in use, the it shall be fully retracted. Do not twist or jam the seat belt, and do not allow the seat belt to touch any sharp objects. The seat belt buckle cannot be blocked by foreign objects. Otherwise, correct engagement of the seat belt locking tab and the buckle will be affected.

Wear the seat belt properly

- › Adjust seat backrest until it is vertical or near-vertical and provides adequate back support.
- › The seat belt shall be neat.
- › The shoulder belt should lie flat on the centre of the shoulder and not on the neck or elsewhere away from the shoulder.
- › The lap belt should be, as much as possible, fastened around the lower part of the hip bone.

WARNING

- › During the drive, all passengers must fasten their seat belts in the correct fashion. Failure to do so can lead to severe injury or even death from collisions or emergency braking as passengers' bodies are not sufficiently bound to seats.

Seat belts

- › At all times, even if the driving distance is short, all passengers including the driver in the vehicle should wear their seat belts properly. Otherwise if an accident occurs, the risk of injury or death can be increased.

Pretensioner seat belts

When a collision occurs, the pretensioner can instantly tighten the seat belt, so that the passengers are best restrained and protected.

The force limiter maintains seat belt load at an acceptable level and reduce force exerted on the passenger's chest.

Operating conditions

The pretensioner seat belt works when the vehicle receives a significant impact from the front.

It may not work when the following mild collisions occur:

- › Head-on collision with a cement concrete wall and the like at a speed below 25 km/h (16 mph).
- › Head-on collision with a small area object such as a fixed telegraph pole or a tree at a speed below 35 km/h (22 mph).

The pretensioner seat belt may not fully function when the vehicle is subjected to the following severe collision.

- › The vehicle flips over by 90° or 180°.
- › The collision comes from the side or rear of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Your vehicle may only be equipped with pretensioner seat belts for some seats. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

WARNING

- › When using the pretensioner seat belt, wear it correctly and adjust the seat to the optimal seating position. Failure to do so will reduce the seat belt performance, leading to severe injury or even death.
- › If you want to install, remove or dismantle the pretensioner seat belt, be sure to contact the authorised service centre. If the pretensioner seat belt is not used correctly, it will not work properly and may cause severe injury or even death in an accident.
- › The pretensioner seat belt cannot be used repeatedly.

After the pretensioner has been deployed during the first collision, you should not extend or retract the seat belt again. At this point, be sure to contact the authorised service centre for replacement.

- › When the pretensioner seat belt is working, white smoke will come out with a loud sound, but it will not cause a fire and is harmless to the human body.

Seat belts

› When a pretensioner seat belt is scrapped, be sure to contact the authorised service centre. Accidental movements of the pretensioner seat belt can cause personal injury.

Three-point seat belt instructions

1. Hold the locking tab and pull the seat belt out of the retractor. Do not twist the seat belt in the process. If you are unable to pull the seat belt out of the retractor, you will need to pull hard the seat belt and then release it. Doing so will trigger the retractor and allow you to pull out the seat belt smoothly.
2. Insert the locking tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.



D54A9AD12752

3. Pull up the shoulder belt and adjust the lap belt until the lap belt tightly fits the body. In this way, the pelvis can bear the impact, reducing the risk of injury.

4. Check that the shoulder belt is across the chest and the middle of the shoulder tightly. Thus, any impact will be distributed across the upper skeleton.
5. Press the unlock button on the buckle to retract seat belt. After the buckle is released, hold on the locking tab until the seat belt is fully retracted. Take care that the locking tab does not knock into other passengers or any nearby objects.



F99634A099C2

How to use the rear middle three-point seat belt

The rear seat belts are used in the same way as the front seat belts. How to use the rear middle three-point seat belt is described below.

1. Hold the locking tab and pull out the seat belt from the top of the rear seat backrest, making sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
2. Insert the locking tab at the lower end into the anti-misinsertion buckle until you hear a "click", making sure that the seat belt is inserted securely.

Seat belts

3. Slide the other locking tab along the seat belt and insert it into the buckle on the other side until you hear a "click", making sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
4. When retracting the rear middle three-point seat belt, follow the reverse order of use.

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tips for safety

- › Airbags cannot be reused.

Once an airbag has been used, it will not work anymore in the second or subsequent collisions, so be sure to contact authorised service centre for replacement.

- › The airbags are auxiliary devices to protect the passenger safety and should be used with the seat belts. In order to obtain the effect of airbags, the passengers must wear the seat belts correctly and maintain the correct posture.
- › Proper use of airbags can realize their safety effectiveness to the full. If it is used improperly, it may not play a security role, but may bring harm to passengers.

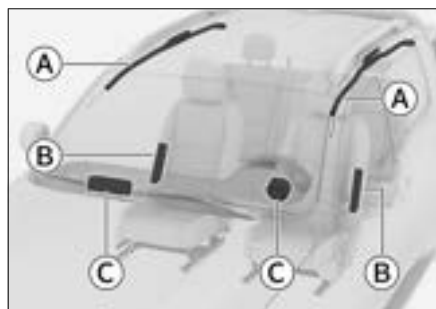
- › When the airbags are being deployed you will notice some loud sounds and smoke. This is normal and will not lead to a fire. The smoke released, however, may cause breathing difficulty when inhaled by individuals suffering from asthma or other respiratory disease. At this moment, it is safer to flee out of the vehicle immediately. If you are unable to evacuate from the vehicle, open vehicle doors or windows to let fresh air in.
- › When any debris (or gas) released by airbags deployment comes in contact with the eyes or skin, clean such material off using water as soon as possible. Otherwise, individuals with skin hypersensitivity may experience a skin reaction.
- › Do not touch airbag components after the airbag has been deployed. Because its component parts will become very hot, it may cause burns and other major injuries.
- › Please do not use the airbag for any other purposes.
- › Please get in touch with authorised service centre if you need to install radio equipment. Electromagnetic waves emitted by wireless equipment have a significant impact on the airbag control units.
- › It is forbidden to strike or squeeze the airbags and the position around it.

Airbags

Avoid the condition that the airbags cannot work normally during accident or the airbags are accidentally deployed in normal driving, which will cause serious injuries or even death to passengers.

Positions of airbags

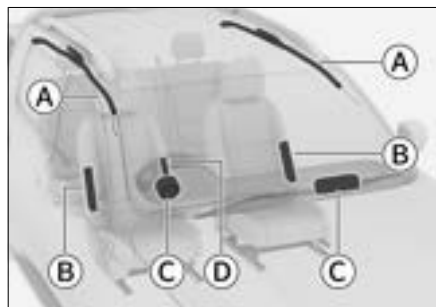
Left-hand drive models



4535F126B69D

- Ⓐ Curtain airbag
- Ⓑ Side airbag
- Ⓒ Front airbags include the following types:
 - Driver airbag
 - Front passenger airbag

Right-hand drive models



1EE40E5B9A73

- Ⓐ Curtain airbag

- Ⓑ Side airbag
- Ⓒ Front airbags include the following types:
 - Driver airbag
 - Front passenger airbag
- Ⓓ Far-end airbag

Front airbags

Overview

The front airbags are located in the steering wheel and the instrument panel in front of the front passenger seat, with the airbag signs on the steering wheel and the instrument panel. When the vehicle encounters a strong front impact, the seat belt will be tightened. At the same time, the airbags at the driver's side and front passenger's side will deploy in order to distribute and cushion any force directed towards the head and chest.

Operating principle

When a head-on collision occurs resulting in moderate or severe impact, the sudden deceleration of the vehicle will be detected by a sensor. At this time, the control device will immediately deploy the airbags.

Precautions

- › The airbag may deploy when the bottom of the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact:
 - 1) The vehicle hits the kerb.

- 2) The vehicle falls into, or runs over a deep pit or drain.
- 3) The vehicle climbs over steps and hits or falls on the road.
- › The airbags may deploy when the vehicle rolls over 90° and 180°.
- › The airbags may not deploy when the vehicle encounters the following kinds of severe impact:
 - 1) Head-on collision with a cement concrete wall and the like at a speed below 25 km/h (or 16 mph).
 - 2) Head-on collision with a small area object such as a fixed telegraph pole or a tree at a speed below 35 km/h (or 22 mph).
- › If the object suffering impact changes in its shape or moves, the impact force from the collision will be reduced. In this case, the airbags may not deploy. When the vehicle collides into a truck from the back, if the vehicle runs under the cargo box, as the impact force recognized by the sensor is weak, the airbags may not deploy.
- › The airbags may also not deploy depending on the angle and direction of collision, even when vehicle speed is relatively high.
- › Do not allow your body to get too close to the steering wheel or to the lower part of the instrument panel:
 - 1) When driving a vehicle normally, the driver should stay away from the steering wheel as far as possible while maintaining the correct driving position.
 - 2) The front seats should be as far from the instrument panel as possible.
 - 3) All passengers should fasten seat belts for optimal protection.
- › Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean on the instrument panel while the vehicle is running.

This is because front airbags deploy at a high speed and with great force. If the passenger is too close to the airbags at this point, he or she may suffer severe injury or even death.
- › Do not allow children to stand in front of the airbag.

When front airbags deploy, it may cause severe injury or even death to child passengers. All children should sit on the rear seats and be protected with the correct restraints.
- › Adhere to the following rules; otherwise these items may cause severe injury to passengers during airbags deployment:
 - 1) Do not place objects on the instrument panel or lean umbrellas or other objects against it.
 - 2) Do not leave objects in the storage box exposed.

Airbags

- 3) Do not hang any objects on windows or on the interior rearview mirror.
- 4) Do not install any decorations on the steering wheel horn.
- 5) Do not place luggage, pets or other objects between the airbags and the driver or the front passenger.

- › Do not clean the inside of the vehicle with water or cleaning solution.

The inflator in airbag is a deployment device. If it becomes damp, the normal operation of airbag will be affected or even serious injuries or death will be caused.

- › Do not apply wax, stickers or similar items to the airbag cover.

Failure to adhere to the advice can impede the airbags deployment.

- › Do not damage the airbag cover.

Otherwise, it will not work normally. Therefore, be sure not to open or damage the airbag cover.

- › Do not dismantle, modify or install devices such as airbags, the instrument panel and the steering wheel.

Improper operations can cause airbags to malfunction or deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injuries or even death.

- › Do not modify the suspension.

If the vehicle height or suspension stiffness is changed, airbags may deploy by mistake, thereby causing severe injuries or even death.

- › Consult with the authorised service centre for assistance when you need to install a guard plate and air deflector at the front of the vehicle.

Modifications to the front of the vehicle can cause distortion to impact signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby triggering accidental deployment of airbags, which may cause serious injuries or even death.

- › Be sure to consult with the authorised service centre for assistance when you need to repair the front of the vehicle or the cabin.

Improper repairs can cause distortion to impact signals sent to the airbag sensor, thereby leading to airbag malfunctions, which may cause serious injuries or even death.

Side airbag

Overview

The side airbag is located inside the outer liner of the seat backrest, with the word "AIRBAG" marked on the seat backrest. The side airbag is a supplement in guaranteeing safety in addition to the seat belt. In the case of collision from one side, the side airbag will reduce the harm to passengers in the vehicle and prevent further collisions.

Operating principle

When the vehicle encounters collision from one side, the sensor will detect an acute change in acceleration on this side and then send a signal to the control device. The side airbag will deploy instantaneously if the operating conditions of the airbag are met.

When a side collision occurs, only the side airbag on the collision side will deploy. In the case of collision on the front passenger side of the vehicle, the side airbag on the front passenger side will still deploy even though there is no one in that seat.

Precautions

- › The side airbag may not deploy sometimes when the vehicle encounters mild collisions described below:
 - 1) Front collision.
 - 2) A minor side impact with weak signal received by the electronic control unit.
 - 3) Rear collision.
 - 4) Rollover.
- › Never place any object over the side airbag to keep it works well.
- › Never attach any object around the side airbag deployment area. Such objects may be thrown out when the side airbags deploy.

- › Never remove, repair or modify the seat with a side airbag and parts around the side airbag deployment area.
- › Do not lean against the side airbag deployment area.
- › Do not use seat covers to cover the deployment area of side airbags.

Curtain airbags

Introduction

The curtain airbags are located on the roof lower edge; you can find airbag marks on pillar. The curtain airbags are a supplement to seat belt. In case of side collision, curtain airbags will reduce the damages to interior passenger and prevent subsequent collisions.

Operating principle

In the event of a side collision, a sensor detects an sharp change in the lateral acceleration of the vehicle and send a signal to the control module. If the curtain airbag work conditions are met, the curtain airbags on the collision side will instantly inflate.

Precautions

- › The curtain airbags may not inflate when the vehicle encounters mild impact such as what is described below:
 - 1) Front collision.
 - 2) Electronic control unit receives a weak signal of mild side impact.
 - 3) Rear collision.

Airbags

4) Rollover.

- › Please do not remain close to the vehicle doors, door pillars or roof rail, or kneel on a front seat. Otherwise, passengers' heads may suffer a severe impact when the curtain airbag inflates, which may cause serious injuries or even death. Pay attention especially when children are in the vehicle.
- › Never attach any object near where the curtain airbag will inflate. Otherwise, there is a risk that object may launch into the cabin when the curtain airbag inflates.
- › Do not hang heavy or sharp objects on the coat hook.

Please do not use clothes hangers if you wish to hang your clothing, and opt for the coat hook directly instead. Otherwise, the clothes hangers may launch into the cabin when the curtain airbag inflates.

- › Do not remove, repair or modify parts near where the curtain airbag will inflate.
- Do not modify roof, roof handrail, roof handrail bracket and side roof lamp.

Far-end airbag

Introduction

Far-end airbag is located in the outer gasket of the driver's seat backrest (the side away from the vehicle door), and there is an airbag sign on the seat backrest. In the event of a side collision, the deployment of far-end airbag can reduce the risk of injury caused by collision between the driver and the front passenger or by the driver hitting the front passenger side door or pillar, so as to protect heads, chests, and other important parts of passengers.

Operating principle

In the event of a side collision, the sensor will detect an acute change in vehicle side acceleration and then send a signal to the control module. If the airbag work condition is met, the far-end airbag will be deployed instantaneously.

Precautions

- › The far-end side airbag may not deploy when the vehicle encounters mild impact such as what is described below:
 - 1) Front collision
 - 2) Mild side collision with weak signals
 - 3) Rear collision
 - 4) Rollover

Airbags

- › Do not use any items to cover the far-end airbag. Otherwise, the normal function of the far-end airbag may be disturbed.
- › Never attach any items around the far-end airbag deployment area. Otherwise, there may be a danger of these items being projectile through the interior when the far-end airbag is deployed.
- › Do not remove, repair or modify seats with far-end airbags and parts around the far-end airbag deployment area without permission.

Child restraint system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety instructions for child seat

Warning label



EE139E1D38BF

This label, which is located on the front passenger's sun visor, is used to alert you that your vehicle is equipped with the front airbag. Note the relevant precautions.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use rear-facing child restraint systems on the seats protected by front airbag (activated), which may cause the child suffering from death or serious injury.

- › Please do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.

Because this places the child passenger too close to the airbag. In the event of airbag deployment, it can cause severe injuries or even death to the child passenger.

- › If the child seat is not installed with a child seat fixing device, use the seat belt to install it and then follow the installation instructions provided with the child seat.

- › Properly fasten the child seat in the vehicle.

If you install the child seat incorrectly, severe injuries or even death may occur in the event of emergency braking or accident.

- › Do not place an unsecured child seat protection device in the vehicle.

If you leave it in the vehicle, it may come into contact with passengers or other objects in the event of emergency braking or severe impact, causing a severe injury or even death.

Child restraint system

- › Even when the child has been secured on a child seat, take care that the child's head or body is not leaning against the vehicle door pillar or roof rail.

When the curtain airbag fully deploys, it can be very dangerous in this scenario as the deployment force may cause a severe injury or even death to the child.

- › Depending on the different types of child seats, when installing or removing a child seat, refer to the installation instructions and precautions provided with the child seat.
- › It is recommended that child seats are installed on both sides of the rear row. Use a suitable child seat. Be sure to leave enough space around the child seat and adjust the seat in front if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

When installing a child seat, take care that the seat belt is not twisted as it passes through the guide device and does not bend over the edge of the guide device.

Fixing points for a child seat



830C6C4F1DDE

There are 4 child seat lower fixing points, which are located between the backrest and cushion of the rear seat.

There are 2 fixing points of the child seat top tether strap, which are located on the rear panel on the rear side of the rear seat backrest. The rear seat backrest needs to be folded for installation.

⚠ WARNING

Fixing points for the child seat are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by the correctly fitted child seat. Under no circumstances should they be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Recommended child seat type

For child seats that meet ECE R44 norm, refer to the following information to make your selection.

Child restraint system

ISOFIX is a mounting system for vehicle child seats based on international standards.

Weight group

| Group | Weight (kg) | Age |
|--|-------------|-------------------------|
| Group 0 | Maximum 10 | 0 to 9 months old |
| Group 0+ | Maximum 13 | 0 to 2 years old |
| Group I | 9 to 18 | 9 months to 4 years old |
| Group II | 15 to 25 | 4 to 7 years old |
| Group III | 22 to 36 | 6 to 12 years old |
| Rearward-facing child seat, weight group 0/0+ / I Forward-facing child seat, weight group I / II / III Cushioned child seat, weight group II / III | | |

⚠ WARNING

For children weighing no more than 18 kg (3 years old for reference), the child seat must be rearward-facing mounted.

i NOTICE

Not every child is suitable for choosing a child seat in weight group, and likewise not every child seat is suitable for your vehicle. It is therefore important to check that a child sits properly in the child seat and that the child seat is securely fastened in the vehicle.

Child restraint system

Installation of a child seat

When installing a child seat, use a child seat that is appropriate for the child's age, weight and size to restrain an infant or a child in the seat.

Applicability information of child seat for different seat positions

| Group | Seat position | | |
|-------|----------------------|------------|--------|
| | Front passenger seat | Rear seats | |
| | | Exterior | Middle |
| 0 | X | U | X |
| 0+ | X | U | X |
| I | X | U | X |
| II | X | U | X |
| III | X | U | X |

Note:

U - This seat is suitable for universal child restraint system certified under this weight group.

X - This seat is not suitable for use with child restraint system in this weight group.

Applicability information of ISOFIX child seat

| Group | Size model | Fixed module | ISOFIX position |
|--------------|------------|--------------|------------------------|
| | | | Rear-row external side |
| Portable bed | F | ISO/L1 | X |
| | G | ISO/L2 | X |
| 0 | E | ISO/R1 | IL |
| 0+ | E | ISO/R1 | IL |
| | D | ISO/R2 | IL |
| | C | ISO/R3 | IL |
| I | D | ISO/R2 | IL |
| | C | ISO/R3 | IL |
| | B | ISO/F2 | IUF |
| | B1 | ISO/F2X | IUF |
| | A | ISO/F3 | IUF |



Child restraint system

Note:

IUF - This seat is suitable for universal forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system approved for the weight group.

IL - This seat is suitable for special ISOFIX child restraint system on the list. Such restraint systems may be special, restricted or semi-universal.

X - ISOFIX position is not suitable for use with this weight group and/or ISOFIX child restraint system of this size.

Child seats installed with seat belts

1. Move the front passenger's seat forwards as far as possible so that there is no contact between the front passenger's seat and the child in the rear.
2. If possible, adjust the vehicle seat backrest and the child seat backrest to the maximum fit state, so that the child seat can be stably supported.
3. Adjust or take out the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed; otherwise, the child seat may interfere with the headrest and can not be able to fit against the backrest.
4. Pull out the shoulder belt, move the belt along the indicated route on the child seat and insert the locking tab into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.
5. With your body weight pressing down on the child seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract and tighten. There must be no signs of slack to the shoulder belt.
6. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

CAUTION

If a booster seat is used, do not take out the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest should be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

Child seats installed with child seat fixing devices

ISOFIX or LATCH is a standard protection system specially designed for child seats. Child seats can be installed with ISOFIX or LATCH in both seats on the lateral sides of the rear row.

1. Move the front passenger's seat forwards as far as possible so that there is no contact between the front passenger's seat and the child in the rear.



Child restraint system

2. Adjust or take out the headrest of the seat where the child seat is installed; otherwise, the child seat may interfere with the headrest and can not be able to fit against the backrest.
3. Put down the rear seat backrest, and fasten the top tether strap at its fixing point. Do not curl over the tether strap. When fixing, be sure to pass the top tether strap under the seat headrest.
4. Rest and lock the seat backrest, and slide the child seat locking mechanism into the lower fixing point to ensure that the two ISOFIX locking mechanisms are properly fixed.
5. Refer to the child seat instruction manual to fasten the top tether strap.
6. Shake the child seat gently to make sure that it has been properly secured.

CAUTION

If a booster seat is used, do not take out the headrest. Also, the top of the headrest should be adjusted to a position that is flush with or closest to the top of the child's head.

WARNING

- › If the child seat is equipped with a top tether strap, tighten the top tether strap according to the installation instructions and precautions provided with the child seat.

Otherwise, severe injuries or even death may be caused in the event of emergency braking or collision.

- › Do not lower the headrest after fastening the child seat top tether strap to its fixing point.

Otherwise, it may come into contact with the top tether strap and loosen the strap as a result. In case of emergency braking or collision, this can cause the child seat to rotate, resulting in severe injuries or even death.

Vehicle anti-theft system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

System introduction

The vehicle anti-theft system helps to keep your vehicle and valuables from being stolen. The vehicle anti-theft system will emit audible and visual alarm if someone tries to enter the vehicle by force.

WARNING

Do not attempt to modify the vehicle anti-theft system.

Instructions

System activation

Use a smart key or the intelligent PEPS system to successfully lock the door. The hazard warning lights flash once, and the vehicle enters the pre-arm mode. In the pre-arm mode, you can still operate the vehicle triggering the alarm.

After the pre-arm state lasts for about 15 seconds, the vehicle will automatically enter the armed state, and the vehicle anti-theft function will be activated.

CAUTION

Please check whether all doors are completely closed. Otherwise, the vehicle anti-theft system cannot be activated.

NOTICE

The central control button will fail in the armed and anti-theft state of the vehicle.

System off

Use a smart key or the intelligent PEPS system to successfully unlock the door. The hazard warning lights flash twice, and the vehicle anti-theft function is deactivated.

Alarm trigger condition

- › The door is unlocked with a mechanical key.
- › Open the door by force.

Alarm cancellation

- › Set the power supply to ON mode.
- › Start the vehicle successfully.
- › Use a smart key or the intelligent PEPS system to successfully unlock the door.

Fuel shutoff system

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Fuel cut-off system

The system will shut off fuel supply and minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the airbag deploys due to the vehicle collision.

After activation of this system, if you want to restart the engine, please refer to the following methods:

1. Switch the power supply mode to OFF.
2. Restart the vehicle.

WARNING

Before starting the vehicle, you must check the ground below the vehicle. If you discover any fuel leakage, it means that the fuel system is damaged. Please do not restart the vehicle at this point.

Event data recorder

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

System description

The vehicle is equipped with the event data recorder (EDR).

The event data recorder (EDR) is mainly used to record data related to the vehicle dynamic system and safety system when a vehicle collision happens to help understand the operation conditions of the vehicle system. However, since collision severity and type vary, EDR may not record the data.

i NOTICE

EDR records data only when a vehicle meets a major collision. When the vehicle runs normally, EDR does not record the data.

Data reading

In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties (such as law enforcement agencies) can use the CANoe device to connect laptops and on-board diagnostic connectors and access EDR to read the data recorded in EDR.

Data reading device can be purchased from CANoe software vendor.

The data items recorded by EDR and their purposes are as follows:

| Data item | Purpose |
|---|--|
| Longitudinal delta-V | To record the vehicle longitudinal acceleration during collision |
| Maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V | To record the maximum longitudinal acceleration during collision |
| Time to reach maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V | To record the time to reach the maximum longitudinal acceleration during collision |
| Vehicle speed | To record the vehicle speed during collision |
| Service brake, on or off | To record the brake pedal state during collision |
| Driver seat belt state | To record the driver seat belt state during collision |

Event data recorder

| Data item | Purpose |
|--|--|
| Accelerator pedal position, percentage of wide open position | To record the accelerator pedal position during collision |
| RPM | To record RPM of power-train during collision |
| Power-on cycle in event | To record the power-on cycle in the event during collision |
| Power-on cycle when reading | To record the power-on cycle when reading during collision |
| Event data logging complete status | To record the event data logging state during collision |
| Time interval between this event and the previous event | To record the time interval between this event and the previous event during collision |
| Vehicle identification number | To record the vehicle identification number during collision |
| ECU hardware number of EDR data | To record the ECU hardware number of EDR data during collision |

| Data item | Purpose |
|---------------------------------|---|
| ECU serial number of EDR data | To record the ECU serial number of EDR data during collision |
| ECU software number of EDR data | To record the ECU software number of EDR data during collision |
| Clipping mark | To record the time point when the EDR acquisition acceleration (horizontal and vertical) first reaches the sensor range |

Data disclosure

Any data recorded by EDR will not be disclosed to third parties except in the following circumstances:

- › With the consent of the vehicle owner or lessee.
- › To be used in a lawsuit at the official request of the police, court, or government department.

However, if necessary, the data recorded by the EDR will be used to:

- › Research and develop the vehicle safety performance.
- › For R&D purpose, data is disclosed to the third parties without disclosing specific information about the owners and their vehicles.



5

Emergency

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| On-board tools..... | 274 |
| Vehicle lifting..... | 276 |
| Spare tyre | 277 |
| Replacing the spare tyre..... | 279 |
| In case of a vehicle accident | 284 |
| Jump start | 286 |
| Engine overheating | 288 |
| Towing..... | 290 |
| Electric winch | 294 |
| Emergency rescue system... | 299 |

On-board tools

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Location of on-board tools

Jack (double-row vehicle)



80308B795509

The jack is placed behind the rear seat backrest. You can see it by folding the rear seat backrest.

1. Pull up the pull ring on the rear seat backrest and lay down the rear seat.
2. Turn the jack adjustment knob counterclockwise until the jack can be removed from the fixing bracket.

3. After using the jack, return the jack to its original position in the reverse order of removal, and make sure that it is securely fixed.

Jack (single-row vehicle)

The jack is placed in the centre of the floor behind the seat.

1. Adjust the right seat to the most forward position, and then tilt the seat backrest forward at an certain angle for easy access to the jack.
2. Turn the jack adjustment knob counterclockwise until the jack can be removed from the fixing bracket.
3. After using the jack, return the jack to its original position in the reverse order of removal, and make sure that it is securely fixed.

Other on-board tools (double-row vehicle type I)



6F13552CF9D6

The on-board tool kit, warning triangles, wheel nut wrenches and other items are placed under the rear seat. You can take out the on-board tools from the gap between the cushion and the carpet.

On-board tools

The on-board document bag, wheel nut trim cover removal tools, first aid kit, tyre pressure gauge and other items are placed in the glove box of the instrument panel on the front passenger side.

Other on-board tools (double-row vehicle type II)



E77B8286BD68

The on-board tool kit, warning triangles, wheel nut wrenches and other items are placed behind the rear seat backrest. You can see them after folding the backrest.

The on-board document bag, wheel nut trim cover removal tools, first aid kit, tyre pressure gauge and other items are placed in the glove box of the instrument panel on the front passenger side.

Other on-board tools (single-row vehicle)

The on-board tool kit, warning triangles, wheel nut wrenches and other items are placed behind the left seat. You can see them after folding the backrest.

The on-board document bag, wheel nut trim cover removal tools and other items are placed in the glove box of the instrument panel on the front passenger side.

⚠ CAUTION

- › The driver must be familiar with the storage location and instructions of on-board tools such as the jack to cope with emergencies.
- › The jack provided with the vehicle is a special tool for this vehicle. Do not apply this jack to other vehicles, and do not apply the jacks designed for other vehicles to your vehicle.
- › And the driver must return the on-board tools to their designated positions after use, and fix them securely. Random placement may cause accidents.

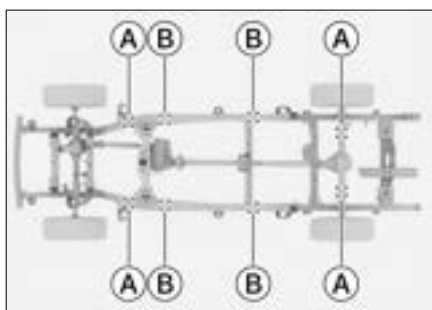
Vehicle lifting

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

› When using a lifting tool to lift the vehicle, do not place any part of your body under the vehicle to avoid injury.

Vehicle lifting position



Ⓐ Jack lifting position

Ⓑ Lifter lifting position

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not operate a vehicle that is not properly supported, as this may cause serious damage, personal injury, or death.
- › If the vehicle needs to be lifted, the lifting tool must be placed against the lifting point. Lifting at any other point may cause damage to the vehicle or cause accidents.

Spare tyre

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Taking out and replacing the spare tyre

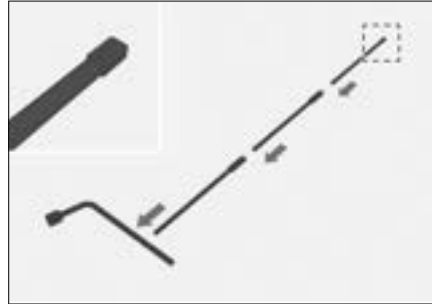
The spare tyre is attached to the bottom of the luggage compartment.

i NOTICE

- › Due to low frequency of use and less friction with the ground, friction coefficients of four tyres will be slightly different after the spare tyre is put on, so drive carefully. It is recommended that you repair the standard tyre as soon as possible and replace the spare tyre.
- › Regularly check the state of the spare tyre such as tyre pressure, cracks and bulges, etc., to ensure that the spare tyre is available for use in case of a failure.

1. Take out the wheel nut wrench and the spare tyre lifter rocker.

Combine the front, middle and rear sections of the spare tyre lifter rocker with the wheel nut wrench into the form as shown in the figure.



2. Put down the spare tyre.

Put the spare tyre lifter rocker into the bottom of the vehicle, put it into the groove of the spare tyre winch, and then turn the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tyre.



3. Take out the spare tyre.

Spare tyre

When the spare tyre is completely lowered, take out the spare tyre tray and carefully take out the spare tyre from the lower rear of the vehicle.



404086076B96

4. When taking out the spare tyre, restore the flat tyre in a reverse order.

CAUTION

When restoring the flat tyre or the spare tyre, make sure that the tyre is raised and secured.

You can push, pull or turn the tyre to ensure that the tyre is stable and does not move. If necessary, loosen and re-fasten it. In the event of improper fastening, the spare tyre may frequently shake during driving, which may cause the steel rope of the spare tyre lifter to break and the tyre to be lost.

Replacing the spare tyre

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre failure symptom

When any of the following situations occur, check if the tyres are punctured or have gone flat:

- › The steering wheel shakes.
- › The vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- › The vehicle is leaning at an abnormal angle.

CAUTION

- › If a tyre is flat or punctured during driving, hold the steering wheel firmly and gently step on the brake pedal to slow down. Emergency braking or sudden steering is prohibited. Otherwise, it may lead the vehicle to go out of control.

- › If there is a flat tyre, replace with the spare tyre immediately. Continuing driving with a flat tyre for any reason can cause instability in your drive and lead to an accident. In addition, doing so can cause damage to rims, wheels, the suspension and the vehicle body.

Preparation for spare tyre replacement

1. All passengers must get off the vehicle with the goods in the luggage compartment unloaded.
2. Park the vehicle at a hard, flat place where it will not impede the normal flow of traffic and where you will be able to work safely.
3. The parking brake is applied.
4. The vehicle is shut down.

For an MT vehicle, shift the shift lever to 1 or R gear position to shut down the vehicle.

For an AT vehicle, shift the shift lever to P gear position to shut down the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not lift the vehicle with the jack when shifting to the P gear position. Otherwise, the jack will not be able to stably support the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

5. Turn on the hazard warning lights and place the warning triangle.

Replacing the spare tyre

6. Prepare the spare tyre, the jack, the spare tyre lifter rocker, the wheel nut wrench and the wheel chock.

⚠ CAUTION

- › You need to use the wheel chock together with the jack.
- › The wheel chock can be purchased at the authorised service centre. Please contact the authorised service centre for the relevant details.
- › If you do not have a wheel chock handy, you can use a piece of rock large enough to stabilize the tyre instead.

How to replace the spare tyre

Removing the faulty tyre

1. Secure the tyre.

Be sure to use a suitable wheel chock against the tyre, and place the wheel chock on both sides of the tyre in the diagonal direction of the tyre to be replaced.

2. Remove the wheel nut trim cover.



9105F1624527

For vehicles equipped with wheel nut trim covers, use the wheel nut trim cover removal tool supplied with the vehicle to take out the wheel nut trim covers in turn.

The wheel nut trim cover removal tool is generally placed in the storage box of the instrument panel on the front passenger side.

3. Loosen the nuts.



C7DAA66F7AD4

Loosen the nut slightly counterclockwise (about 1 turn) in the order shown using the wheel nut wrench.

Replacing the spare tyre

- Place the jack below the part of the vehicle to be lifted. Adjust the jack position and height to ensure that the jack is stably held in the lifting position.

For lifting position, see "Vehicle lifting".(> Page 276)

⚠ CAUTION

You must observe the following when using the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may shift, resulting in serious injuries:

- > The engine must be shut down.
- > Do not use the jack when there are passengers inside the vehicle.
- > The jack must be placed on flat, hard ground.
- > Do not place any objects on the top or bottom of the jack.
- > The jack should be lifted to a height at which the tyre can be changed.
- > After lifting the vehicle by the jack, do not enter under the vehicle.
- > When lowering the vehicle, pay attention to the surroundings to avoid injury to the operator and other individuals.

- Install the spare tyre lifter rocker.



D7FFECF0BCB7

Combine the front, middle and rear sections of the spare tyre lifter rocker with the wheel nut wrench into the form as shown in the figure. Then, insert the spare tyre lifter rocker into the jack end hole.

- Raise the vehicle.

Turn the combination tool clockwise to bring the tyre slightly off the ground.

⚠ CAUTION

- > When using the jack, ensure that the jack adjustment lever should be coaxial with the rotation centre of the jack screw.
- > During operation, first lift the vehicle up slightly. Carefully check whether everything is normal, and then continue raising the vehicle.

- Remove all fixing nuts and remove the tyre.

5

Emergency

Replacing the spare tyre

⚠ CAUTION

- › When placing the tyre on the ground, keep the spokes facing upwards to avoid damage.
- › Before installing the spare tyre, place the removed tyre at the bottom of the vehicle to avoid the displacement of the jack and accidents.

Installing the spare tyre

1. Remove any foreign object from the wheel mounting surface.
Before installing the spare tyre, remove the foreign objects from the wheel mounting surface. Failure to do so could result in the wheel nut loosening while driving, causing the wheel disengagement.
2. Install the spare tyre and tighten the nuts with approximately the same force, and make sure that the nut is in full contact with the wheel mounting surface.
3. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack counterclockwise.

4. Tighten the wheel nuts 2 to 3 times in the order indicated in the figure.



8122F1A2129D

Tightening torque: $120 \pm 10 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

i NOTICE

After replacing the spare tyre, tighten the nut to the tightening torque as soon as possible using a torque wrench. Otherwise, the wheel nut is easy to be loose or fall off, which may lead to serious casualties.

5. For vehicles equipped with wheel nut trim covers, install the wheel nut trim covers.
6. Put the defective tyre in where the spare tyre is placed and fix it. Put all the tools into specified place and secure them.

⚠ WARNING

Burning tyres by individuals produces toxic gases. Please send it to the authorised service centre for treatment.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use damaged, cracked or deformed nuts and wheels.

Replacing the spare tyre

- › Fix the nuts when using the wheel nut wrench. Otherwise, the nuts are likely to be disengaged while screwed, resulting in personal injuries.
- › Do not step on the wheel nut wrench or use other tools to over-tighten the nuts. Otherwise, the wheel nuts may be damaged.
- › When installing nuts, do not apply any lubricant or grease. If the nuts are screwed excessively, the nuts and the wheels are likely to be damaged. If the nuts are loosened, the wheels are likely to be disengaged during driving, resulting in an accident.

In case of a vehicle accident

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Traffic incidents occur to the vehicle

When the vehicle is forced to stop on road because of traffic incidents or vehicle breakdown, in order to warn other vehicles, take the following measures:

- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Place the warning triangle behind your vehicle in accordance with local traffic laws and regulations.

A vehicle getting stuck or bottoming out

When travelling in snow, mud and sand, the vehicle is easy to get stuck or bottom out. Therefore, you should drive carefully.

If the vehicle gets stuck, you can try to operate as below:

1. Shut down the vehicle and apply the parking brake.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand around the stuck tyres.
3. Place wood blocks, stones or other materials to help improve the tyre adhesion.
4. Restart the vehicle.
5. Release the parking brake and speed up carefully to get the vehicle out of the pit.

When the vehicle gets stuck or bottoms out, please contact professional rescue teams or service providers if the vehicle cannot get out of the trap by the methods above. Dragging the vehicle unprofessionally for rescue is prohibited.

WARNING

While freeing the vehicle, pay attention to the following:

- › Make sure that the surrounding area is clear and free from any other vehicles, objects, or persons.
- › Please be especially careful, considering that the vehicle will suddenly rush forwards or backwards when the vehicle gets out from the pit.
- › Check whether there are larger objects such as stones in the mud or snow when getting the vehicle out of mud or snow. Please remove them timely to avoid damage to the vehicle body and sensors during getting out.

In case of a vehicle accident

WARNING

Please observe the following precautions during rescue to avoid potential vehicle damage and ensure personal safety.

- › When using a tow hook for towing, securely fasten a recovery blanket in the middle of the tow rope. This precaution prevents the tow hook or rope from breaking and rebounding, thus averting potential vehicle damage and ensuring personal safety.
- › Never drag the vehicle from the side or vertically, with the best angle of the tow hook within the range of 5° up and down and 25° left and right.
- › Never drag the vehicle during launch start. The initial towing speed should not exceed 5 km/h (3 mph) (start off slowly until the tow rope is taut).
- › When using a tow hook for towing, ensure that the drag or towing force does not surpass the weight of the vehicle.

Jump start

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Symptoms of a drained vehicle battery

- › Clicking sounds are emanating from the starter, which is not turning over. Even when the starter turns over, it outputs very little power, and you are unable to start the engine.
- › The headlamps are shining more dimly than usual.
- › The horn does not sound or the sound is weak.

Jump start method

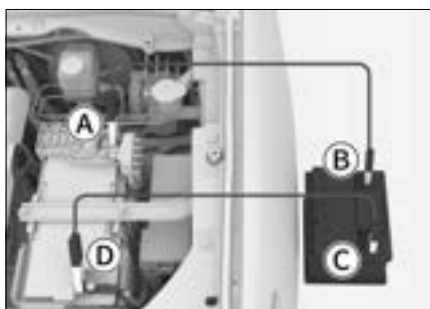
If you cannot start the vehicle due to the drained battery, you can connect the battery of another vehicle by jumper cables to start the vehicle.

The wire cross-section of jumper cables should be no less than 25 mm².

⚠ CAUTION

- › Not all vehicle batteries can be used. The jump start can only be performed with a battery having a rated voltage of 12 V.
- › Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.

1. Connect the booster cables in the following order.



- (A) Positive terminal of the discharged vehicle battery ⊕
For connecting, open the protective cover on the positive terminal of the battery first.
- (B) Positive terminal of the rescue vehicle battery ⊕
- (C) Negative terminal of the rescue vehicle battery ⊖
- (D) Negative terminal of the discharged vehicle battery ⊖

Jump start

i NOTICE

The battery position of some models is slightly different from the above picture. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

2. Recharge the battery.

Start the rescue vehicle, increase the engine speed slightly, and keep such speed for about 5 minutes to temporarily charge the discharged battery.

3. Start the discharged vehicle.

If you still cannot start the vehicle, check whether the jumper cables have been connected correctly, then charge the battery.

4. Remove the jumper cables.

Once the vehicle is started, remove the jumper cables in an order contrary to the connection.

- › When connecting or removing jumper cables, do not wind the cables with fans, belts and the like.
- › Ensure that all cables are connected correctly, and keep a certain distance between their ends to avoid contact between positive and negative terminals.

⚠ CAUTION

If a battery is drained frequently, go to the authorised service centre for inspection.

⚠ WARNING

- › During charging or jump start, gas may escape from the battery. There is a risk of explosion. Be sure to keep the battery away from sparks, open flames and other flammable materials.
- › Battery fluid is corrosive, and it can cause serious injuries to eyes and skin. In case of accidental contact, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

Engine overheating

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Engine overheating

Off-road thermal management mode

You can set the off-road thermal management to **【Normal temperature】** or **【High temperature】** through the **【Vehicle setting】** → **【In-Car】** → **【Driving control】** → **【Off-road thermal management mode setting】** interface on the multimedia display screen.

The engine is prone to overheating when running under high load for a long period of time. Setting the off-road thermal management mode to **【High temperature】** allows the engine cooling to be switched on earlier to prevent or mitigate engine overheating.

Overheating symptoms

i NOTICE

Under extreme conditions (dragging, towing, climbing, overloading, etc.), the engine may overheat and the power of the whole vehicle will decrease.

- › The water temperature indicator is in the red zone.
- › The engine accelerates weakly.
- › There is steam emanating from the bonnet.
- › The A/C compressor may stop working automatically.

Handling methods

1. Park the vehicle in a safe spot and shut down the engine.
If the A/C system has been turned on at this point, turn it off.
2. Check whether there is steam coming from the bonnet.
If no steam is emanating, open the bonnet and then start the engine.
If steam is emanating, wait until there is no more steam. Open the bonnet, and then run the engine.
3. Check whether the cooling fan is running.
If the fan is not working, turn off the engine and contact the authorised service centre.

Engine overheating

If the fan is running normally, wait for the water temperature to begin to drop, and then shut down the engine.

4. Check the coolant level.

Add coolant if the coolant level is too low. Check for pipeline leakage. If there is any leakage, contact the authorised service centre.

5. Check whether there is any foreign object in the core of the radiator.

If there is any foreign object, remove it.

› Do not add coolant when the engine is overheated. If coolant is suddenly added, it is easy to damage the engine. Add coolant after the engine is completely cooled down.

⚠ CAUTION

If the water temperature indicator gets to the red zone again during driving, head to your nearest authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not open the bonnet immediately if you see steam emanating from the bonnet. Doing so may cause serious injury such as burns.
- › When the radiator is at a high temperature, do not open the radiator cap or the overflow tank lid. Otherwise, steam or coolant escaping may cause severe injuries such as burns.
- › When opening the radiator cap or the overflow tank lid, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Also, open the cap or lid slowly after covering it with a piece of cloth.
- › When the engine is running, do not touch or get close to the fan and belt. Otherwise, there is a risk of your hands or clothing becoming caught within and of severe injuries as a result.

Towing

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

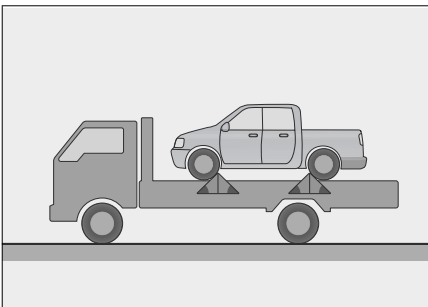
Using a professional vehicle to tow

⚠ WARNING

You must obey the relevant local laws and regulations when towing.

When the vehicle needs to be towed, we suggest a lift truck or a flatbed truck, and you should entrust a authorised service centre or a specialized towing company with the traction.

Towing with the flatbed truck

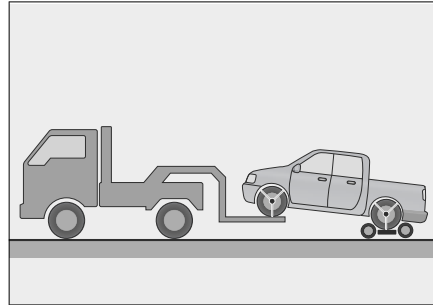


BD0E2FD47BE4

When using a flatbed truck, lock the vehicle firmly.

Towing with the lift truck

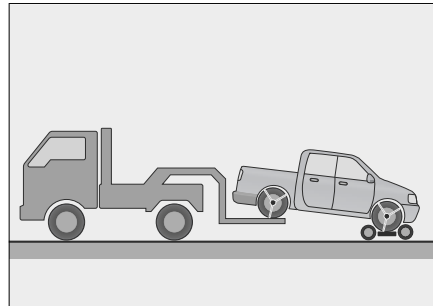
Towing from the front



ED4D6ED4EF6A

Place the tow truck under the rear wheel and lock firmly.

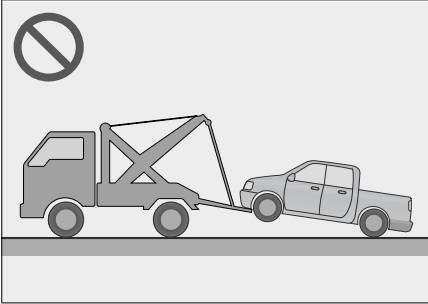
Towing from the rear



96ECCD4BAF01

Place the tow truck under the front wheel and lock firmly.

Towing with the hoisting type truck is prohibited



71297AEAF72B

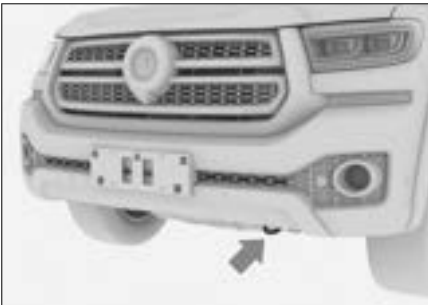
Do not use a hoisting type truck for towing; otherwise it may damage the vehicle body.

⚠ CAUTION

For a 4WD or RWD vehicle, please use a flatbed truck or a tow truck during towing. Towing with two wheels on the ground is forbidden; otherwise, the vehicle will be seriously damaged.

Tow hook

Front tow hook (type I)



B2611296BEF7

The front tow hook is located on the front end area of the chassis, as shown in the figure.

Front tow hook (type II)



027D5FC8337D

The front tow hook is located on both sides of the front end area of the chassis, as shown in the figure.

Front tow hook (type III)



2DC090F037D9

The front tow hook is located on the front end area of the chassis, as shown in the figure.

Towing

Rear tow hook (type I)



6018DAFCAAB4

The rear tow hook is located on the rear end area of the chassis, as shown in the figure.

Rear tow hook (type II)



8BB3F68794CD

The rear tow hook is located on both sides of the rear end area of the chassis, as shown in the figure.

Tow rope

The tow rope should be elastic to protect vehicles. It is recommended to use an artificial fibre rope or the rope made of similar elastic materials.

The tow rope can only be installed on the designated tow hook or towing ring of the vehicle.

When installing the tow rope, you should be careful not to damage the vehicle body. The distance between the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle should be within 4 to 10 m.

A recovery blanket should be attached to the centre of the tow rope. For towing at night, a tow rope with reflective materials should be used as much as possible to increase the warning effect.

CAUTION

- › You need to purchase the tow rope by yourself.
- › Do not use a steel rope to tow as that will damage the bumper.

Towing with the tow hook

If the vehicle breaks down and special towing vehicles are unavailable, a tow hook can be used for temporary towing. This method is only suitable for short distances, on hard pavement, and at low speeds.

WARNING

You must obey the relevant local laws and regulations when towing.

Towing the vehicle

For towing the vehicle, the driver must sit in the vehicle and operate the steering wheel and brake pedal, with the wheels, axles, steering system, brake system, transmission system (transmission, etc.) and lighting system (indicator and brake light) in good condition.

The detailed methods are as follows:

1. Start the vehicle and shift to the N gear position.

If the vehicle cannot be started, set the power supply to the ON mode.

For automatic transmission vehicles, use the shift lever emergency unlocking device to shift to the N gear position. (▷ Page 128)

For four-wheel drive vehicles, set the driving mode to ECO mode, normal mode or 2H mode.

⚠ CAUTION

- ▷ When you cannot shift the transmission to the N gear position, do not use a tow hook for towing.
- ▷ Tow hooks should only be used for towing vehicles in ECO mode, normal mode, or 2H mode.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, release the parking brake and wait for towing.

For automatic transmission (8AT) vehicles, the towing speed should not exceed 30 km/h (19 mph), and the towing distance should not exceed 50 km (31 mph).

For automatic transmission (9AT) vehicles, the towing speed should not exceed 30 km/h (19 mph), and the total towing distance during the transmission service cycle should not exceed 50 km (31 mph).

⚠ CAUTION

- ▷ If the vehicle is not started, the assist system will not work, and the steering and braking operations will be difficult. The vehicle speed should be reduced as much as possible during towing.
- ▷ During towing, pay attention to the brake lights of the vehicle in front to avoid looseness of the tow rope.
- ▷ Do not use the tow rope to tow the vehicle over a long distance downhill.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle backwards.

Electric winch

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

System introduction

The electric winch is driven by the vehicle battery. When the vehicle is stuck in the snow, sands or mud, it can be used to rescue the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Before using the electric winch, you should confirm that the battery is in good condition.
- › When the vehicle is not started, do not use the function for a long time so as to prevent the battery from being drained. Therefore, if possible, use the electric winch when the vehicle is started.

Instructions

⚠ WARNING

- › The use situation of the electric winch is complicated, and improper operation may cause personal injury and vehicle damage. Therefore, we recommend that the electric winch should be operated by specified people or someone who has offroad training experience.
- › When operating the winch, please wear the protective gloves to avoid injury.
- › Before operating the winch, please read The Winch Instructions carefully attached with each vehicle to know more detail content.

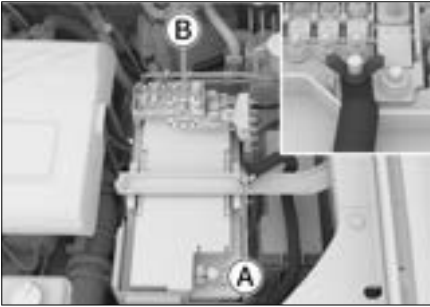
⚠ CAUTION

Using requirement for electric winch:

- › Do not use it as a kind of lifting.
- › Do not overload the winch. (The maximum single wire tension of the winch is 4310 kg.)
- › Do not use the winch to tow people.
- › Do not use the winch under the water.
- › In special case, the trunk protector, pulley and such equipment are needed. You can buy them depending on your requirement.

1. Connect the power supply of the winch.

Electric winch



Ⓐ Common fixing position (on the bracket of the battery)

Ⓑ Connecting position (positive terminal of the battery)

Remove the power supply cable fixing nut of the winch and take out the power supply cable.

Open the protective cover on the positive terminal of the battery, and then fix the power supply cable on the positive terminal of the binding post.

i NOTICE

Be sure to use a nut to fix the power supply cable firmly to avoid loosening or poor contact.

2. Use the cloth wrapped flat head screwdriver to pry the cover outwards in the opening position of the top of the lower grille cover. Then, pull the "OPEN" position outward to remove the cover. Remove the both sides of the rope guide of the lower grille cover, and you can see the rope hook and power supply outlet.



i NOTICE

- › Do not apply sudden or excessive force during removal, as this may damage the clip.
- › Depending on different vehicle configuration, some vehicle models do not include openings on the top of the lower grille cover. You can pull the "OPEN" position directly when removing them.

5

Emergency

Electric winch

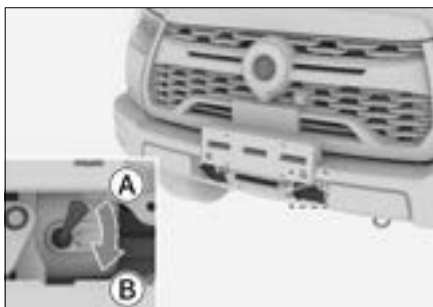
3. Connect the winch controller (it is in the storage box of front passenger side).



EFA0FD83A0F3

Open the power supply outlet cover, and insert the binding post of the controller. Then, rotate the fixing nuts to tighten it to prevent from getting loose.

4. Rotate the clutch switch, and turn the clutch to disconnecting status.



FD7A3C64558C

- Ⓐ Closing status
- Ⓑ Disconnecting status

When the clutch switch is in disconnecting status, the winch rope can be pulled out quickly. At this point, do not overload when towing or pulling.

When the clutch is in closing status, you can loosen or tighten the winch rope through the controller.

⚠ CAUTION

After connecting the power supply:

- › If you do not use the winch (not towing and pulling), please turn the clutch switch to disconnecting status, so as to avoid starting the winch unconsciously and resulting in personal injury.
- › If you use the winch (towing and pulling), you must turn the clutch switch to closing status, to prevent from damaging the winch.

Electric winch

5. Take out the rope hook from fixing bracket, and pull the winch rope to a proper height through the rope hook belt, so that the winch rope can be fixed into a solid object.



74BB6A1FD4E4

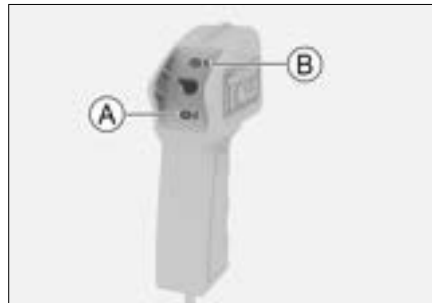
When a layer of winch rope is left, the traction can be maximized. Therefore, pull the winch rope as much as possible. (What's more, left 10 coils of the winch rope on the rope roller so as to avoid the rope getting loose.)

⚠ CAUTION

- › When the black protective sheath appears, stop laying the rope. Otherwise, the winch rope may be pulled away from the roller when overload, resulting in severe personal injury and property damage.
- › Do not hold the winch rope directly to avoid getting hurt. Please use the matched rope hook belt to loosen and tighten the rope.
- › Check the status of the winch rope. There should be no knot, abrasion and so on.

- › There should be no people on the fixing object.
- › When fixing the winch rope on a tree, you must use trunk protector.

6. Turn the clutch switch to closing status. At this point, toggle the controller switch to IN position to tow and get out of stuck by tightening the winch rope.



58518B3960E2

- Ⓐ IN (tighten the winch rope)
- Ⓑ OUT (loosen the winch rope)

⚠ CAUTION

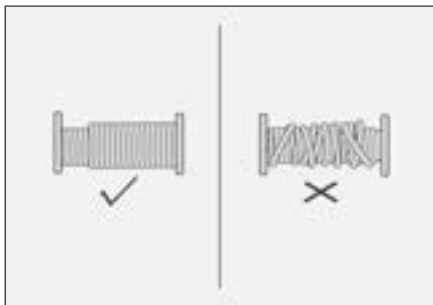
The towing winch rope should be horizontal with the vehicle (generally not more than 15°). If the angle is too large, the rope guide or motor may be damaged.

5

Emergency

Electric winch

7. After getting out of stuck, please disentwine the winch rope and entwine it again so that the winch rope can be entwined and layered correctly.



368211475110

When putting the winch rope in order, the tension of the winch rope can be kept through the rope hook belt. It can move through the tighten speed of the winch rope, so that the rope can be entwined evenly and tightly. When 1 m of the winch rope is left, stop entwining it.

Hanging the rope hook on the fixing bracket and tightening the winch rope. When the rope is stretched, stop tightening it and press for 2 to 3 times, so that the tension of the rope can be kept.

⚠ CAUTION

- › When tightening the winch rope, the tension of the winch rope should be kept.
- › Do not hold the winch rope directly to avoid getting hurt. Please use the matched rope hook belt to loosen and tighten the rope.

8. Remove the controller and put it into the glove box at the front passenger side.
9. Remove the power supply cable of the winch, and fix it on the battery bracket (common fixing position).

⚠ CAUTION

The electric winch is not commonly used. Please do not insert the power supply cable into the positive terminal of the battery for a long time.

Emergency rescue system

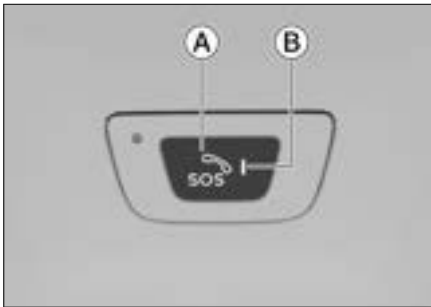
Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Emergency rescue system

Button introduction

The emergency help button (with indicator light) is located near the reading light.




CD6DB098FEDE

(A) Emergency help button (SOS)

(B) Indicator light

Manual emergency help

This system can be used to make a call to PSAP (Public Safety Answering Point) only if you need help from the police or medical institutions.

With the power supply in ON mode, press and hold the emergency help button  for about 0.5 to 4 s, and system will make a call to PSAP for help. At the same time, the system will send the vehicle position and other information to PSAP.

i NOTICE

After a call for help, only the PSAP can hang up.

Automatic emergency help

With the power supply in ON mode, when the vehicle has a serious collision (airbag deployment) accident, the system will automatically call the PSAP for help. At the same time, the system will send the vehicle position and other information to PSAP.

i NOTICE

The automatic emergency call function is not triggered by any accident. When you can manually dial the help call, do not wait for the system to trigger the automatic call. You should manually dial the help call immediately to avoid delaying the response time.

⚠ CAUTION

Under the influence of many factors, the emergency rescue call will not work in following situations (including but not limited to):

Emergency rescue system

- › System failure or damage will not trigger an emergency call.
- › You will not be able to make a normal rescue call to the customer service due to damaged audio device, or damage to or false connection of the wiring harness connecting the emergency call system or audio device.
- › If airbags are not deployed in slight collision or other abnormal situations, the emergency help call cannot trigger automatically. At this point, you can make an emergency help call by triggering it manually or other ways.
- › Damage to the emergency help button will not trigger the emergency call manually.
- › The emergency help call will not be triggered under the condition of weak signal of mobile network, disturbance, hide and so on.
- › When the GPS device is damaged or in weak signal area (such as underground garage, tunnel or mountain area), the vehicle position cannot be located.
- › After the vehicle is powered off, the emergency help call will not be activated.
- › Other objective factors may prevent the emergency help call from functioning.

Indicator lights state

| Indicator lights state | State description |
|------------------------|--|
| Off | The system is normal or in sleep state or the vehicle power supply is in OFF mode. |
| Orange light on | The system is restarting. |
| Green light on | The system startup is completed, and the self-test is completed without fault. The system is in a call state. |
| Green light flashing | The system sends vehicle information and positioning information. |
| Red light on | The self-test of the system fails and is in an error state. |

i NOTICE

When the system fails, go to the authorised service centre for inspection as soon as possible.

Spare battery

The emergency rescue system contains 1 spare battery which can ensure the normal operation of the system when the vehicle battery is damaged during an accident.

Emergency rescue system

Normally, in case of a low spare battery level, the system will automatically charge it when the vehicle starts.

i NOTICE

The service life of the spare battery is 3 years.

To determine the state of the spare battery, contact the authorised service centre for inspection.



6

Maintenance

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Necessity of vehicle maintenance..... | 304 |
| Engine compartment | 305 |
| Safety signs and labels..... | 311 |
| Part replacement..... | 313 |
| Vehicle maintenance..... | 319 |

Necessity of vehicle maintenance

Vehicle maintenance, a health diagnosis of the vehicle, can reduce the trouble of repairing the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in use, its components and parts will inevitably wear out. To ensure safe driving conditions, regular inspections, maintenance, and repairs are required to maintain and restore vehicle performance.

Vehicle maintenance making you drive more safely

During the maintenance, you can carry out necessary preventive maintenance according to the use of the components and parts, so that you can safely drive the vehicle before the next maintenance.

Extending the service life of the vehicle and reducing the use cost of the vehicle

Components and parts such as brake linings and tyres, etc. cannot be used permanently, as they will gradually wear out while in use. Use of components and parts that exceed the wear limit is likely to cause vehicle breakdown and even lead to traffic accidents. Therefore, it is necessary to conduct regular maintenance.

Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Safety tips

⚠ WARNING

- › The engine compartment is a hazardous area for operation and must be handled with extreme caution!
- › When performing oils inspection and filling operations, observe the following requirements, otherwise burns or fire may occur:

The engine is shut down.

The parking brake is applied.

Allow the engine to cool down completely.

Keep children away from the engine compartment.

Do not splash oils on the engine.

Do not allow water to come into contact with the engine compartment.

- › When performing operations related to fuel system or electrical devices, observe the following precautions, otherwise fire may occur:

Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.

Do not smoke.

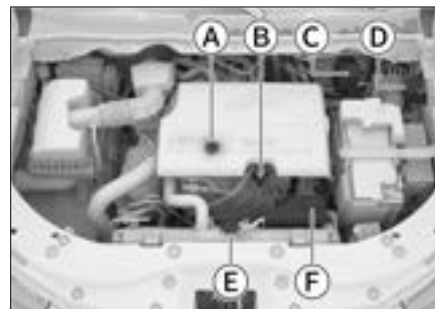
Do not operate near open flames.

⚠ CAUTION

When adding oils, be careful not to misuse them. Otherwise, serious functional defects or damages to vehicle parts may be caused.

Fluid level

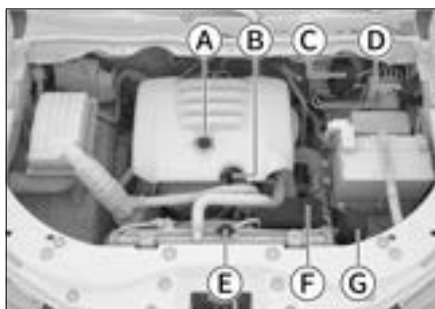
GW4D24 model



- Ⓐ Oil filler cap
- Ⓑ Oil dipstick
- Ⓒ Brake fluid reservoir
- Ⓓ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
- Ⓔ Radiator cap
- Ⓕ Overflow tank

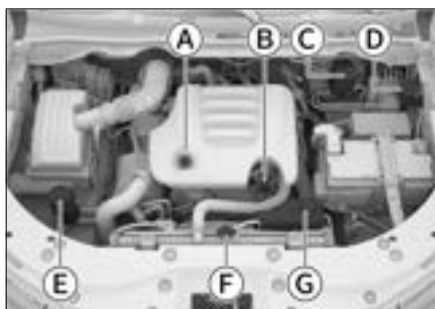
Engine compartment

GW4C20B model



- Ⓐ Oil filler cap
- Ⓑ Oil dipstick
- Ⓒ Brake fluid reservoir
- Ⓓ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
- Ⓔ Radiator cap
- Ⓕ Overflow tank
- Ⓖ Power steering fluid tank

GW4D20M model



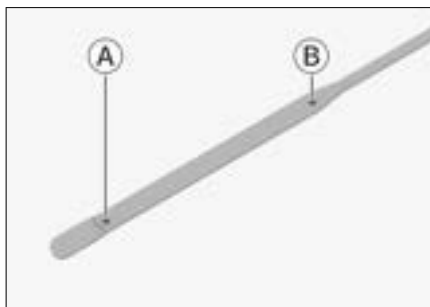
- Ⓐ Oil filler cap
- Ⓑ Oil dipstick
- Ⓒ Brake fluid reservoir
- Ⓓ Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
- Ⓔ Power steering fluid tank
- Ⓕ Radiator cap
- Ⓖ Overflow tank

i NOTICE

For a right-hand drive model, the brake fluid reservoir is located near the air filter.

Engine oil

Check



- Ⓐ Lower limit
- Ⓑ Upper limit

Stop the vehicle on flat ground and warm up the engine to normal water temperature. Then, switch the power supply mode to OFF mode, and pull out the engine oil dipstick and clean it out after 10 minutes. After that, fully insert the oil dipstick to the dipstick guide pipe, finally pull out the oil dipstick and check the oil level after 10 s.

The oil level should be between the maximum and minimum levels marked on the oil dipstick.

If the engine oil level is close to or lower than the lower limit marked, top up engine oil until it is at the level between the upper and lower limits marked.

Engine compartment

i NOTICE

- › The actual size and shape of the oil dipstick vary from engine model.
- › Check that the engine oil level is not less than 1/4 of the dipstick scale (between the upper limit and the lower limit) before the vehicle climbs an extreme slope; otherwise, add engine oil.

⚠ WARNING

- › When the engine is running, if you contact or get close to the rotating parts such as the belt or the fan, your hands, clothing, tools and so on may be trapped into the rotating parts, resulting in accidents.
- › Take care to prevent burns when checking or adding engine oil.
- › Keep the engine oil in a safe place when it is not in use. If the engine oil leaks into the ground or floats on the water surface, environment will be polluted.

Filling

Open the engine oil filler cap, and slowly pour the oil so as to avoid oil spill. Any fluid overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled fluid may cause damage to the engine compartment components.

Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring engine performance and lifespan. Therefore, it is important to use high-quality and purified oil. Please use only engine oil that meets specifications so as to ensure the vehicle performance.

Oil additives

Your vehicle does not require any oil additives, as additives cannot improve the performance and durability of the engine but reacts chemically with engine oil, causing oil invalid and damaging engine.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Therefore, check and replace engine oil on a regular basis. Otherwise, insufficient oil levels or deteriorated engine oil may cause poor lubrication of engine rotation parts, thereby cause sintering and hence damage to the engine.
- › The engine oil works for lubrication and cooling. The engine oil level goes down over time even if you are driving normally, as a certain amount of engine oil for lubricating the piston and the valve will also be mixed in the combustion chamber and burned. Engine oil levels may go down depending on the specific driving conditions.
- › Do not add excessive engine oil.

Engine compartment

Engine coolant

Check

The water level in the overflow tank should be checked regularly.

Check that the fluid level in the overflow tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the coolant level is lower than the minimum level marked, top up with new coolant until the coolant level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the cooling system shows no signs of leakage.

Fill

Allow the engine to cool down, and then slowly open the lid.

If the coolant spills, clean it up immediately to prevent parts or paint from being damaged.

Please use only coolant that meets the specifications.

i NOTICE

- › The coolant contains ethylene glycol to lower its freezing point. Indiscriminate disposal may lead to water pollution.
- › Please contact authorised service centre, if you need to replace the coolant.

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not open the radiator cap when the engine is hot. There may still be some pressure inside the cooling system. Opening it at this point may cause burns or other injuries when heated coolant spurts out.
- › The coolant contains harmful substances. Do not contact the coolant with any part of the body. Flush with plenty of clean water in time in case of contact.
- › Seek medical advice immediately if the coolant is swallowed accidentally.

Brake fluid

Check

The fluid level in the tank should be checked regularly.

Check whether the fluid level in the tank is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the brake fluid level is lower than the minimum level marked, add new brake fluid until the fluid level is between the maximum and minimum levels marked. Also make sure that the braking system shows no signs of leakage.

Engine compartment

Filling

Open the tank cover. Pour in the fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any fluid overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled fluid may cause damage to the compartment components.

Only use brake fluid that meets specifications.

⚠ CAUTION

Before opening the tank cover, be sure to clean the cover and its surrounding area; otherwise, dust, sand and other foreign objects may be mixed into the brake fluid, resulting in decrease of braking performance or damage to brake components.

⚠ WARNING

- › Insufficient brake fluid levels can compromise brake performance and increase the risk of an accident.
- › Brake fluid is harmful to the human body and corrosive. In case of accidental contact, rinse it immediately with plenty of water. If you ingest it, go to a hospital immediately.

Power steering fluid

Check

The fluid level in the tank should be checked regularly.

Check that the fluid level in the reservoir is between the minimum and maximum marked levels.

If the fluid level in the storage tank is lower than the minimum level, top up with new power steering fluid until the level is between the maximum and minimum levels. Also make sure that the steering system shows no signs of leakage.

Filling

Unscrew the lid of the tank cover, and pour in the oil slowly to prevent it from overflowing. Any oil overflow must be removed immediately. Otherwise, the spilled oil may cause damage to the compartment components.

Please use only power steering fluid that meets the specifications.

⚠ WARNING

If there is not enough power steering fluid, the steering-assist system will fail or the steering system will be damaged, and there will be a risk of an accident as a result.

Windscreen washer fluid

Filling

Open the tank cover. Pour in washer fluid slowly to prevent overflow. Any washer fluid overflow must be removed immediately.

Engine compartment

You should use quality washer fluid for better cleaning capabilities and for anti-freeze protection in cold season.

i NOTICE

You should use the detergent with enough anti-freeze performance, if the ambient temperature is lower than 0 °C.

The detergent should be placed out of the reach of children to avoid accidental ingestion.

The detergent is flammable and should be stored far from fire.

⚠ CAUTION

Please do not top up liquids such as soapy water into the tank in place of the detergent. Otherwise, the paint on vehicle body may be damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Do not top up washing fluid when the engine is at a high temperature, or when the engine is running. This is because the washing fluid contains alcohol. Spilling the fluid on the engine carries a risk of fire.

Radiator and fan

Regularly check the radiator, fan and other heat-radiating components in the engine compartment. If a component is particularly dirty or has foreign objects, please clean it in time. When you cannot determine whether it is working normally, please send your vehicle to a authorised service centre for checking.

Please timely check whether the radiator, fan and other heat-radiating components are covered with dirt when the vehicle is driving in a bad environment (such as driving through water, sand and mud) each time. If they are covered by dirt, please go to a authorised service centre for inspection and cleaning timely.

Battery

The vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery.

When the battery shows low level, it is necessary to charge or replace the battery in time. Please head to authorised service centre for service if you need to replace the battery.

Safety signs and labels

Radiator cover warning label



5663729F9D40

The label is on the radiator cap, which serves to remind you to refrain from opening the radiator cap when the engine is overheated. Otherwise, this may cause scald or the risk of coolant spillage.

Engine compartment warning label

Type I



3E624E5B40D6

Type II



5898D8C96650

This label is located on the engine compartment front cover plate or the front grille trim plate to remind you of the following:

- › The type and filling amount of A/C refrigerant.
- › The cooling fan may be started at any time. Do not put your hand into the fan shield. Otherwise, when the fan is started unexpectedly, serious personal injury may be caused.

Battery warning label

Type I



DAB7C7FCEECE

6

Maintenance

Safety signs and labels

Type II



D3D43E803352

This label is located on the battery to inform you of the following precautions before installing, removing or inspecting the battery:

- › Children should keep away from the battery.
- › To prevent the risk of fire or explosion, keep the battery away from high-temperature heat sources and open flames during use or charging, as it may produce flammable gases.
- › The battery contains corrosive liquid.
- › Take necessary protective measures such as wearing goggles during operation.

Part replacement

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Fuse replacement

If any electrical components do not work, the fuses may have been blown out. In this case, carry out the inspections based on the following operations and replace the fuses if necessary:

1. Turn off all electrical components.
2. Switch the power supply to OFF mode, apply the parking brake, and disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
3. The fuses are located in the following positions:

> Located in the fuse box of the engine

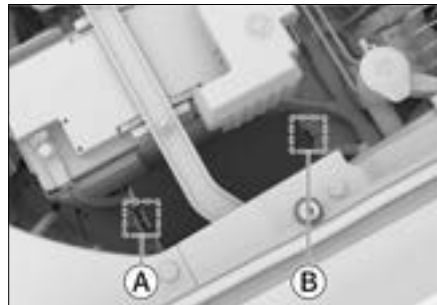
compartment (type I)



91D9E1ACC337

Press the two pawls of the fuse box cover and lift it, and remove the fuse box cover to see the fuse.

> Located in the fuse box of the engine compartment (type II)



967422FC8D9E

Ⓐ Pawl

Ⓑ Handle

Press the pawl of the fuse box cover and lift it to open one side of the fuse box cover, then pull the handle on the other side and lift it to remove the fuse box cover.

Part replacement

> Located on the left side of the instrument panel



CD1BC3202F36

Remove the cover and you can see it.

⚠ CAUTION

- > Keep water and other liquids away from the fuse box to avoid damaging the electrical components.
- > Install the fuse box cover on the fuse box correctly. Otherwise, penetration of moisture or dirt will affect the use of fuses.

4. Use the safety clips in the vehicle to pull out the fuses. Refer to the circuit information on the fuse box cover to find the fuse corresponding to the faulty appliance and check it.

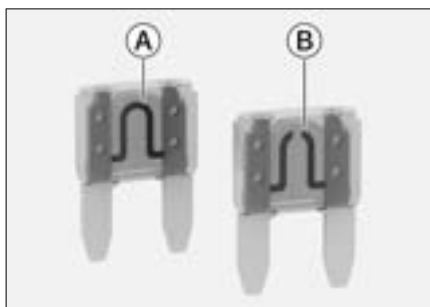


3DB47F5BD17A

⚠ CAUTION

- > Fuse clips and spare fuses are stored in the fuse box of engine compartment.
- > Fuse-related circuit information is attached to the cover of the fuse box, and the corresponding relation between fuses and electrical components can be checked.
- > Since there may be more than one fuse causing the breakdown, check all the fuses that may cause the breakdown before the breakdown disappears. If the breakdown cannot be eliminated in the end, contact the authorised service centre for handling.

5. Check the blown fuse inside the fuse box. If it is blown out, replace it with a spare fuse with the same specifications.



1DE999FF7FC4

- Ⓐ Normal fuse
- Ⓑ Blown fuse

Part replacement

⚠ WARNING

When replacing a fuse, never use a repaired fuse or one with different specifications, as this could lead to a fire due to circuit overload.

6. Check whether the electrical components return to normal operation.

i NOTICE

If the spare fuse with the same specifications is blown out again in a short time or the electrical components do not return to normal operation, the vehicle may have a serious electrical system fault. In this case, contact the authorised service centre for assistance duly.

Front wiper blade replacement (type I)

Periodically check the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blade immediately if you find the following conditions:

- › Cracks or hardened areas are found on wiper blades.
- › Streaks or dirt are left after using the wiper.

i NOTICE

When lifting and putting back the wiper, do not pull the wiper blade directly to avoid deformation or even damage.

1. Switch the power supply to OFF mode, and lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not open the bonnet while the wiper is lifted. Otherwise, the bonnet and the wiper will be damaged.

2. Rotate the wiper blade in the direction indicated to maximize the angle between it and the plastic connector.



7E765ED83AE7

3. Take out the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



365605F7CF67

- Ⓐ Wiper blade
- Ⓑ Locking tab

Part replacement

Press down the locking tab and pull the wiper blade in the direction indicated at the same time until it separates from the wiper arm.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the windscreen, never place the wiper arm directly on it when the wiper blade is not installed.

4. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back to the windscreen.

For easy installation, please refer to step 2 to maximize the included angle between the wiper blade and the plastic connector.

After installation, move the wiper up and down to ensure that it is installed in place.

Front wiper blade replacement (type II)

Periodically check the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blade immediately if you find the following conditions:

- › Cracks or hardened areas are found on wiper blades.
- › Streaks or dirt are left after using the wiper.

⚠ CAUTION

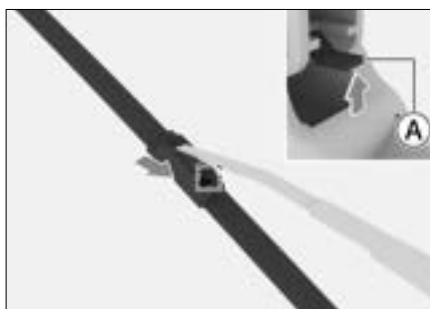
When lifting and putting back the wiper, do not pull the wiper blade directly to avoid deformation or even damage.

1. Switch the power supply to OFF mode, and lift the wiper arm from the windscreen.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not open the bonnet while the wiper is lifted. Otherwise, the bonnet and the wiper will be damaged.

2. Take out the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



F9C5D6D0AD3E

- Ⓐ Locking tab

Pull the locking tab and pull the wiper blade in the direction indicated at the same time until it separates from the wiper arm.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the windscreen, never place the wiper arm directly on it when the wiper blade is not installed.

3. Install a new wiper blade and return the wiper back to the windscreen.
After installation, move the wiper up and down to ensure that it is installed in place.

Part replacement

Lights

The combination headlights on a new vehicle have been calibrated at the factory. If you often carry heavy items in the vehicle, the combination headlights may need to be recalibrated. The calibration of the combination headlights should be done at the authorised service centre.

Bulbs inspection

Regularly check the working conditions of the exterior lights. Burnt-out bulbs will reduce visibility and the ability to signal to other drivers, severely compromising vehicle safety.

Replacing bulbs

Bulbs should be replaced by a professional.

Normally, do not replace damaged bulbs by yourself. Instead, it is advisable to have a professional do this. The primary reason is that before replacing the bulbs, first remove other parts from the vehicle, especially for those bulbs that can only be removed from inside of the engine compartment. Because of this, it is recommended to visit the authorised service centre to replace the bulbs.

i NOTICE

The vehicle is equipped with an LED light source that cannot be removed or replaced individually. In case of any issues such as damage to the light source or malfunction, it is recommended to visit the authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

- › The inside of the bulbs is pressurized, and there is a danger of injury as they may burst during replacement!
- › Never modify external lighting and signalling devices.
- › Never add external lighting and signalling devices that are not specified in the compulsory standards.

About lights fogged

Under conditions such as driving on a rainy day or washing the vehicle, fog may form inside the light cover. This is caused by the temperature difference between the air inside and outside the lights, and it is the same phenomenon as window glass fogging on rainy days. It does not indicate any functional issues. However, if large water droplets adhere to the light cover or if water accumulates inside the light, contact the authorised service centre for inspection.

Part replacement

CAUTION

Do not use chemical solvents or strong cleaning agents to clean the external light cover to avoid damage to it.

Vehicle maintenance

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Tyre maintenance

To ensure safe driving, ensure that the tyres used suit your vehicle in their models and sizes with a good tread pattern and appropriate tyre pressure.

WARNING

- › Vehicles equipped with all-terrain tyres have been optimized for both ordinary road and off-road conditions. As a result, their driving comfort and noise levels differ from those of standard road tyres. Additionally, since the tyres are designed for off-road use, proper maintenance is crucial.
- › After driving on off-road conditions, please check the wheels and tyres for any damage. Off-road driving may damage the wheels and tyres, leading to tyre failure, vehicle loss of control, or serious personal injury.

- › Do not use tyres that are excessively worn, under-inflated or over-inflated, as they may lead to accidents and personal injury.
- › You must abide by all manual instructions regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.
- › Burning tyres by individuals produces toxic gases. Please head to the authorised service centre for service.

CAUTION

About off-road driving after tyre pressure reduction

Before off-road driving, reduce the tyre pressure to adapt to off-road driving conditions. After off-road use, reinflate the tyres to the specified tyre pressure. Insufficient inflation is the main cause of abnormal damage such as tyre cracking and flat tyre.

Tyre pressure inspection

Maintaining appropriate tyre pressure can maximise vehicle handling ability, tyre tread life and driving comfort.

Under-inflated tyres wear out unevenly, affect vehicle handling and fuel efficiency, and are more likely to go flat tyres due to overheating.

Over-inflated tyres can cause discomfort for passenger, are more likely to be damaged by uneven roads, and wear out unevenly.

Vehicle maintenance

It is recommended to check the tyre pressure regularly (including the spare tyre).

Measure the tyre pressure when the tyre is cold. The measurement conducted when the vehicle is parked for more than 3 hours or its driving distance is not more than 1.5 km (or 1 mile) will get more accurate data. When checking tyre pressure after the tyre has been warmed up (after driving for a few kilometers), the pressure reading will be 30 to 40 kPa higher than the cold-state reading. This is normal. Do not deflate the tyre to reach the recommended cold-state pressure, as this will lead to insufficient tyre pressure.

i NOTICE

Even if the tyres are in good condition, the tyre pressure may drop by 10 to 20 kPa every month. Check them regularly.

i NOTICE

When checking the tyre inflation, also check for any external damage, foreign objects or excessive wear, etc. If you encounter any of the following situations, replace the tyre as soon as possible:

- › There is damage and bulges on the tyre tread or sidewalls.
- › There is excessive tread wear on the tyre.

Tyre wear inspection



ABE909A51C10

- Ⓐ Tyre wear mark
- Ⓑ Tyre wear mark position diagram

i NOTICE

The tyre wear mark position diagram is a schematic representation for reference only. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

You should replace the tyres promptly once they have reached the maximum wear limit.

Continuing to use tyres with shallow treads or where the tread wear indicators are exposed can result in longer braking distances, steering failure, and flat tyre, which may lead to accidents.

If you notice uneven tyre wear or experience a continuous vibration while driving, visit the authorised service centre for inspection.

When installing new tyres, be sure to perform dynamic tyre balancing to enhance ride comfort and extend the lifespan of the tyres.

Vehicle maintenance

Tyre rotation

To extend the lifespan of your tyres and ensure even wear, it is recommended to check tyre pressure and wear at least once a month. If the tread depth difference is 1.5 mm or more, a tyre rotation is necessary.

The tyre rotation should be performed by professionals. It is advisable to have it handled by the authorised service centre.

Wheel balance

Unbalanced wheels can affect vehicle control performance and tyre service life. Even during normal use, the wheels may lose their balance. Therefore, balance the wheels according to the wheel dynamic balance parameters.

Avoiding tyre flatness

If the vehicle is parked in a high temperature environment for an extended period, the tyres may experience slight deformation at the contact points with the ground. This is known as "tyre flatness" and is considered normal. However, this may cause the vehicle body and steering wheel to shake while driving. As the mileage increases, the tyre will heat up and return to its original shape, and the shaking will gradually disappear.

When the vehicle is stationary for an extended period, minimise tyre flatness using any of the following methods:

- › The tyre pressure can be increased (by about 300 kPa), which cannot be used for normal driving. Before driving, the tyre pressure must be restored to the recommended tyre pressure.
- › Move the vehicle at least once every 30 days (15 days is optimal). Ensure that the movement causes the original force bearing point to rotate at least 90°.

Replacing tyres and wheels

- › To replace tyres, ensure the new tyres meet the same specifications as the original ones, with the same or higher load index and speed rating.
- › The original tyres provided with this vehicle represent the optimal choice for handling, comfort, and economy. It is recommended that they should be replaced with original tyres at an authorized Great Wall Motor service station.
- › Replace tyres in pairs (i.e. replace both front tyres or both rear tyres simultaneously). Failure to do so may affect braking and handling performance of the vehicle.
- › To replace wheels, ensure the new wheels have the same specifications and sizes (such as diameter and offset) as the ones being replaced. Original wheels can be purchased at an authorized Great Wall Motor service station.

Vehicle maintenance

⚠ WARNING

- › Do not mix tyres of different manufacturers, models, tread patterns, or tread wear levels.
- › Do not mix tyres of different structures, such as radial and bias ply.
- › Do not mix summer, all-season and winter tyres.
- › Ensure that you replace the tyres and wheels with those having correct specifications and sizes. Installing unsuitable tyres or wheels on the vehicle will affect its handling and stability, potentially leading to accidents such as collisions.

Sunroof maintenance

Daily maintenance frequency

The daily maintenance frequency depends on the driving condition and the use frequency of the sunroof.

If you are driving through sandy areas or areas with high rainfall levels, it is recommended that you increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

⚠ CAUTION

If the sunroof is not maintained on schedule, leakage or abnormal noise may occur to the sunroof. Adjust maintenance frequency depending on the conditions of use. For instance, in sandy zones or during seasons when there is higher usage, increase the frequency of routine maintenance.

Routine maintenance procedure

Dust and impurities may be concentrated in the sunroof seal strip, mechanical parts or rails, leading to abnormal sounds or malfunctions of the sunroof, as well as clogging the drainage system. Regularly open the sunroof, remove dust and impurities, and use clean cloth and water to wipe the sunroof seal strip surface, as well as regularly apply grease on the mechanical parts for maintenance.

Open the sunroof and check whether the sunroof shows signs of being stuck in the course of operation. If yes, please head to a authorised service centre for services.

⚠ CAUTION

- › When the sunroof malfunctions, please head to a authorised service centre as soon as possible for check and maintenance.

Vehicle maintenance

- › In cold and icy conditions, do not force open the sunroof to avoid damaging the sunroof motor and the sunroof seal strip. The sunroof should only be opened after the temperature inside the vehicle has risen and the sunroof seal strip and the roof opening have thawed.
- › Open the sunroof after washing the vehicle in cold and icy conditions. Use a piece of soft, dry cloth to wipe dry the sunroof seal strip before driving.
- › The sunroof must be closed fully before the vehicle enters a car wash facility. Do not allow water jets to be pointed directly at the sunroof seal strip. Prevent the seal strip from deforming under the pressure of a high-pressure water jet. Failure to do so could lead to water entering the vehicle interior and cause damage to the seal strip.
- › When driving on bumpy roads or in hilly areas, do not open the sunroof fully for extended periods of time as the vibrations may cause damage to internal sunroof components.
- › During the rainy season, step up checks for any sand or dust on the sunroof seal strip, and remove them in a timely manner to ensure good sealing performance of the sunroof.

Protection films for new vehicles

After purchasing a new vehicle, remove the protection films in time. For example, the positions of weatherstrips, A-pillar trim plate, B-pillar trim plate, etc. outside the vehicle, and the positions of the interior handle and chrome plating trim strip in the vehicle.

i NOTICE

Due to variations in vehicle shape, design, and assembly methods, the placement of the protective film may differ from what is outlined in the manual. Please refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased for details.

Exterior maintenance

Vehicle wash

A regular vehicle wash helps to protect its appearance. Please regularly clean your vehicle.

i NOTICE

The longer such corrosive substances as insects, bird droppings, tree resins, road dust, industrial fallout, tar, soot, and snow melt salt remain on the body surface, the greater the damage to the body paint. High temperatures (for example, sun exposure) will further aggravate the corrosion effect.

Vehicle maintenance

To prevent damage to the vehicle paint, immediately remove corrosive substances on the body surface. Do not wait until your vehicle is due for a complete wash.

Wash your vehicle in a shady spot and not under direct sunlight. If the vehicle has been parked under direct sunlight for a long time, you must move the vehicle to a shady spot before cleaning, and wait until the body surface is cooled down.

Cleaning methods

1. Check that there are no fallen leaves, bird droppings, etc., on the vehicle body.
Remove these dirt, and then rinse immediately with clean water so as not to damage the vehicle body surface finish.
2. Wash the vehicle thoroughly with water to remove surface dust.
Clean your vehicle using water and a soft brush, a sponge, or a piece of soft cloth.
3. After washing and cleaning the vehicle, use a special leather or soft towel to dry off the vehicle. Do not allow the vehicle to dry out naturally as this may cause the vehicle body to lose its luster or generate water stains.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Do not use acid, strong alkaline, strong chemical cleaning agents to wash the vehicle. Prolonged soaking by strong detergents will cause serious corrosion of the body paint and bright stripes, affecting the appearance of the vehicle.
- › After washing the vehicle or driving through flooded road, depress the brake pedal lightly to make sure that the brake is functioning normally.
- › When washing the vehicle in cold season, do not flush the gaps in the keyholes or doors, etc. to prevent the lock hole or the seal strip from freezing.
- › When cleaning the vehicle, do not open the fuel tank door to flush its inside.
- › Before washing the vehicle, be sure to raise the windows completely and do not flush it with the high-pressure water against the glass edge. The high-pressure water flow may warp the seals, making the seals unable to prevent the water from entering the cabin.

Waxing

Waxing is conducive to vehicle maintenance, and the vehicle must be thoroughly cleaned before waxing to ensure the effect of waxing.

Vehicle maintenance

There are many types of car wax available on the market, each with different properties, so choose carefully. Using the wrong wax could cause paint discolouration rather than protecting the vehicle's body.

Under normal circumstances, you should consider the purpose and properties of the car wax, the age of the vehicle, the paint colour, and the driving environment when choosing a wax. For details, contact the authorised service centre or professionals.

Repairing paint surfaces

Always check whether there are any paint peeled off or scratches on the vehicle body surface. If such a phenomenon occurs, repair the surface immediately to prevent corrosion of the metal in the damaged area.

Repair paint can only be used to repair small areas of peeled-off paint or scratches. Large areas of peeled-off paint should be repaired by professionals.

Maintenance of matte lacquer finish

If your vehicle is equipped with matte paint, please note the following during maintenance and use of the vehicle:

- › Never use automatic vehicle washing equipment with hard brushes to clean the vehicle. Hard brushes can damage the paint surface. It is recommended to use a soft sponge, neutral cleaning agents and plenty of water to manually clean the vehicle.
- › When cleaning the body, use a gentle wiping and washing method to avoid excessive force or friction on the body; otherwise, the matte effect will be changed, and the gloss of the body will be uneven.
- › Frequent vehicle washes for a long time will cause the paint gloss to increase or uneven.
- › Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- › Please do not use paint cleaning agents, sanding materials, or polishing products such as polishing wax to treat the paint surface. Failure to do so will damage the paint surface.
- › If you accidentally apply the vehicle wax to the paint surface, please remove it immediately with silicone resin remover, and use gentle force to avoid excessive force during operation.
- › Avoid resin, grease and other lipids in contact with the paint, as this can leave marks.
- › Use asphalt remover to remove tar stains on the vehicle body.

Vehicle maintenance

- › Remove insects and bird droppings and other dirt on the body in time. Use water to soft them before cleaning, or wash them carefully with a high-pressure water gun. If this kind of dirt has firmly adhered to the body, you can spray shellac remover before cleaning.

Liquid leakage check

To ensure driving safety, it is recommended to check for fuel, oil or other liquid leaks under the vehicle before each driving. In case of the apparent leakage, contact the authorised service centre for service.

Cavity anti-corrosion wax instructions

Cavity wax injection anti-corrosion technology is applied to the inner cavities of vehicle doors, bonnets, sill beams, and other parts. This technology effectively isolates water and corrosive substances from metal, enhancing the vehicle's durability and corrosion resistance, and extending its service life.

When the vehicle is driving on a high temperature or severely bumpy road, it's normal for excess yellow waxes in the cavity to flow out through the water hole. You can use hot water plus the proper amount of commercially available cleaning agent to wipe and rinse them.

Interior maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agents may contain harmful substances that could cause injuries. For cleaning the interior, it is recommended to open the doors or windows. Use only cleaning agents that are made for vehicle cleaning and follow the instructions on the package.

i NOTICE

- › Do not allow water or any liquid come into contact with instrument panel, floor or electrical components when cleaning the interior as water will damage those components.
- › Do not clean the vehicle floor with water to avoid vehicle body corrosion.

Carpets

Regularly clean carpets with a vacuum cleaner. Allowing dirt to remain on carpets will increase wear on them.

Regularly washing carpets with detergent will keep them in better condition. Use a foaming detergent to clean carpets. To keep carpets as dry as possible, do not add water to the foaming detergent.

Textile

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt from the textile.

Vehicle maintenance

If the textile becomes contaminated, clean it promptly to prevent the stains from spreading. Use the following methods to gently remove as much of the stains as possible, depending on its condition.

For liquid stains, gently blot the stains with a paper towel to absorb as much of the stains as possible.

For solid dry stains, first remove as much of the residue as possible, and then use a vacuum cleaner to clean up the remaining stains.

Based on the cleaning progress of the stains, please use the following methods for further cleaning:

1. Soak a clean white cotton cloth that will not shed lint with water.
2. Screw the cotton cloth to half dry (no dripping is advisable).
3. Gently scrub from the edge of the stains towards the centre until no more dirt transfers to the cotton.
4. Dry naturally.

i NOTICE

For stubborn stains, use mild, neutral soapy water or a fabric-specific detergent. Be sure to follow the detergent's instructions. After cleaning, repeat the steps to rinse off any excess soapy water or detergent, and allow the fabric to dry naturally.

⚠ CAUTION

- › Avoid using sharp objects to scrape or rub surface dirt, as this may damage the fabric.
- › Do not use strong solvents such as glass cleaner.
- › Oil and other stubborn stains can be difficult to completely remove, so be sure to take precautions to protect the fabric.

Leather

Regularly use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt, especially from creases and seams.

Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with water, and then buff it up with another soft dry cloth. Use a leather cleaner for deeper cleaning.

Wipe off the leather cleaner with a soft dry cloth as soon as possible after cleaning with the leather cleaner. Do not leave a cloth with leather cleaner on any part of the interior trim for a long time. Some leather cleaners may cause the resin or fibres of the interior trim textile to discolour or break.

Do not use liquid containing organic substances like alcohol to clean leather; do not use petrol, acidic solution or alkaline solution to clean leather.

Do not use brushes, hard sponges and other tools with rough surfaces when cleaning.

Vehicle maintenance

Do not use silicone or gel cushions on leather surfaces, as they can cause the leather to harden and crack.

Suedette

Always use a soft brush, a piece of dry cloth or a vacuum cleaner to remove dust from the suedette surface.

If the suedette surface becomes stained, the following operating instructions should be observed:

- › Before removing the stain, first remove any matter adhering to the stain. If the stain on the surface is thick (yoghurt, jam, etc.), use a spoon or a cardboard to remove it; if it is a liquid stain, use white absorbent paper or a sponge.
- › Use a clean and dry white rag or wrung out sponge for wiping.
- › When cleaning the suedette surface, do not allow the surface to get too wet. If necessary, wash a rag or a sponge several times during wiping.
- › Remove local stains immediately. To avoid spreading the stain further, wipe the stain from its edge to its centre.
- › Do not wipe the stain hard, as this can cause it to spread or penetrate deeper into the material.
- › When using a special cleaner, do not pour the cleaner directly onto the suedette surface.

Do not use alkaline or alcoholic solvent cleaners.

- › Once the suedette has dried completely its surface can be restored to its original state by brushing it lightly with a soft brush.

Rubber parts

Exposure to the environment may cause the surface of rubber parts to become soiled and lose their shine. Rubber parts should be cleaned regularly with rubber conditioners, especially worn rubber parts.

To prevent damage and reduce noise, avoid using conditioners that contain silicone for routine maintenance of rubber seals. Instead, clean them with water or a suitable conditioner.

Plastic parts

i NOTICE

Liquids containing alcohol or solvents (nitro thinner, cooling cleaner, petroleum ether cleaners, fuel, cosmetics such as perfume and sunscreen, mosquito repellent, etc.) can damage the surface of plastic parts. Clean them with a soft microfibre cloth (slightly moistened with water).

Plastic parts include but are not limited to the following: vehicle light covers, air outlet assemblies and interior painted parts.

Vehicle maintenance

Windows

Clean the inside and outside of windows with glass cleaner and dry all glass and plastic surfaces with a soft cloth or paper towel.

CAUTION

If a heating wire is attached to the inside of the rear window, excessive wiping may cause it to move or break. Therefore, wipe lightly along the direction of the heating wire.

Seat belts

- › Use mild warm soapy water to clean soiled seat belts. Do not use bleach, dyes or cleaning solvents. Such products may reduce the durability of seat belts.
Allow seat belts to dry naturally in the air before driving.
- › Too much dust accumulated inside the seat belt guide ring will cause seat belts to retract more slowly. Scrub the inner side of the guide ring with mild warm soapy water.

Anti-corrosion measures

Factors that affect the corrosion rate

- › The accumulation of dirt, dust, or snow in the lower part of the vehicle body can accelerate corrosion.

- › Damage to the coating or other protective layer, arising from sand attacking or minor accident, may quicken corrosion.
- › If the vehicle runs in areas where relative humidity is high or temperature is above freezing point, it may quicken corrosion.
- › There is much salinity in the air and salt on the road of industrial pollution areas and coastal regions, which may quicken the paint corrosion.
- › Rising temperature may quicken the corrosion of poorly ventilated parts.

Protecting the vehicle from corrosion

- › Park the vehicle in a well-ventilated and dry place.
- › Regularly use clean cold water and neutral vehicle detergent to wash the vehicle so as to keep it clean.
- › Regularly check whether the paint is damaged. If damaged, repair it as soon as possible.
- › Regularly check the lower part of the vehicle body. If there is sand, dirt, snow, ice or other coverings, clean them with water as soon as possible.
- › Check the interior of the vehicle frequently to ensure that the carpet is dry and clean.

Vehicle maintenance

When transporting chemicals, cleaning agents, fertilizers, salt, etc., take special care and use appropriate containers for transportation. If splashes or leaks are found, clean them immediately and keep them dry.

- › Keep the door drain hole open so as to avoid water logging.
- › If bird droppings, resin, insect carcasses, asphalt, cement, industrial dust, coal tar, gasoline, benzene or other similar objects are accumulated on the body surface, clean them as soon as possible.
- › If you always drive on a deicing salt covered road, saline-alkali land, seaside and other roads containing salt, please wash off the attachments at the bottom of the vehicle at least once a month, and take special maintenance measures, such as chassis armour.
- › If you drive regularly on sand road, please consider installing mudguard behind the wheels.

Long-term storage of the vehicle

The parking position of the vehicle should help to prevent deterioration of the vehicle condition and facilitate the restarting of the vehicle. If possible, please park your vehicle indoor.

If you need to store the vehicle for an extended period (one month or longer), please take the following steps beforehand:

- › Top up fuel.
- › Clean and dry vehicle exterior thoroughly.
- › Clean the inside of the vehicle to ensure it is clean and tidy.
- › Release the parking brake, and use the wheel chock to hold against the tyres.
- › Open vehicle windows on one side slightly (if the vehicle is to be parked indoors).
- › Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery.
- › Use a stowed towel or piece of cloth to cushion the wiper blade from the windscreen glass.
- › To reduce the risk of sticking, silicone lubricant should be applied on all door seals.
- › Use a vehicle cover made of porous cotton to cover the vehicle. Because plastic materials such as non-porous materials will accumulate moisture, and is likely to damage the vehicle body paint.
- › When possible, run the engine for short periods from time to time until it reaches operating temperature.

7

Technical data

Vehicle identification..... 332

Overall parameters 334

Vehicle identification

Vehicle equipment

Please note that this manual contains all the standard equipment, country-specific equipment and special equipment for this model series. Thus, some equipment or features described in this manual may not be installed onto your vehicle or are only available in some markets. For further configuration information, please refer to relevant sales information or consult with your distributor selling the vehicle to you.

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the vehicle identity code and unique to every vehicle. It is marked in the following locations:

- › The upper left side of the instrument panel



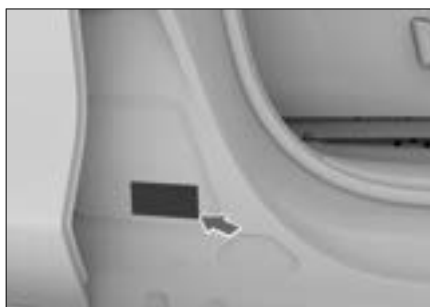
- › Front section of the right vehicle frame rail



i NOTICE

Due to different countries and regions, some models have the vehicle identification number marked on the front section of the left vehicle frame rail. Refer to the actual vehicle that you purchased.

- › On the vehicle nameplate at the lower end of the centre pillar of the right front door



Vehicle identification

i NOTICE

After using the diagnostic instrument to connect the on-board diagnosis connector, you can read the vehicle identification number in the electronic control unit (ECU).

Engine number

GW4D24



43596C1C88A7

The engine number is engraved on the engine block, as shown in the figure.

i NOTICE

For easy viewing, a label containing the engine model and number is attached on the timing cover of the engine.

GW4C20B



C3D19A94FB23

The engine number is engraved on the cylinder block above the starter as shown in the figure.

i NOTICE

For ease of viewing, a label containing the engine model and number is attached to the cylinder head cover near the exhaust side.

GW4D20M



4889C61DD3AC

The engine number is engraved on the engine cylinder block as shown in the figure above.

i NOTICE

For easy viewing, a label containing the engine model and number is attached on the timing cover of the engine.

Overall parameters

Power parameters

Engine

| Item | Data | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| Engine type | GW4D24 turbo-charged diesel engine | GW4C20B turbo-charged gasoline engine | GW4D20M turbo-charged diesel engine |
| Maximum net power/speed (kW/rpm) | 135/3600 | 160/5500 | 120/3600 |
| Maximum net torque/speed (N•m/rpm) | 480/1500 to 2500 | 380/1800 to 3600 | 400/1400 to 2600 (Euro 5, Euro 6) 400/1500 to 2500 (Euro 4) |
| Maximum gradeability [%] | 45 | 40 | 45 |

Tyre specifications

Type I

| Item | | Data |
|----------------|-----------------------|---|
| Specifications | Standard tyre | 265/60R18 110H |
| | Spare tyre | 265/60R18 114H |
| Tyre pressure | | See the tyre pressure label on the lower part of the left front door centre pillar. |
| Tyre chain | Specifications | Tyre chain of model T150 TPU |
| | Installation location | Rear wheel |

Type II

| Item | | Data |
|----------------|---------------|---|
| Specifications | Standard tyre | 265/65R18 114T |
| | Spare tyre | |
| Tyre pressure | | See the tyre pressure label on the lower part of the left front door centre pillar. |

Overall parameters

| Item | | Data |
|------------|-----------------------|--|
| Tyre chain | Specifications | TPU tyre chain with base material thickness 6 mm and total thickness 15 mm at riveted steel bowl |
| | Installation location | Rear wheel |

Type III

| Item | | Data |
|----------------|-----------------------|---|
| Specifications | Standard tyre | 245/70R17 110T |
| | Spare tyre | |
| Tyre pressure | | See the tyre pressure label on the lower part of the left front door centre pillar. |
| Tyre chain | Specifications | Tyre chain of model T140 TPU |
| | Installation location | Rear wheel |

Wheel parameters

| Item | | | Data |
|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|--|
| Dynamic balance parameters | Unilateral [g] | | ≤ 8 |
| | Bilateral sum [g] | | ≤ 15 |
| Alignment parameters | Rear wheel | Rear wheel camber | $0^{\circ} \pm 30'$ (left and right difference $\leq 30'$) |
| | | Rear wheel toe-in | $0^{\circ} \pm 30'$ (left and right difference $\leq 30'$) |
| | Front wheel | Kingpin caster | $3.5^{\circ} \pm 30'$ (left and right difference $\leq 30'$) |
| | | Front wheel camber | $11' \pm 30'$ (left and right difference $\leq 30'$) |
| | | Front wheel toe-in | $5' \pm 5'$ (left and right difference $\leq 2'$) |
| | | Kingpin inclination | $12.2^{\circ} \pm 30'$ (left and right difference $\leq 30'$) |

7

Technical data

Suspension specifications

| Item | Data |
|------------------|--|
| Front suspension | Double-wishbone independent suspension |

Overall parameters

| Item | Data |
|-----------------|---|
| Rear suspension | Longitudinal-mounted leafspring rigid axle suspension |

Brake parameters

| Item | | Data |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------|
| Brake pedal | Free travel [mm] | 10.3 ± 1 |
| Front brake pad (friction material) | Minimum thickness [mm] | 2 |
| Rear brake pad (friction material) | Minimum thickness [mm] | 2 |
| Front brake disc | Minimum thickness [mm] | 29 |
| Rear brake disc | Minimum thickness [mm] | 20 |
| Rear brake drum | Maximum inner diameter [mm] | 212 |

Fluid parameters

GW4D24 engine oil

To ensure the performance and the service life of the engine, we recommend you to use the engine oil recommended by the OEM. If the genuine engine oil cannot be purchased in your area, we recommend you to use the following engine oil.

For vehicles with Euro V or higher emission standard and equipped with DPF (particulate filter), the recommendations are as follows:

- › Use the C3 5W-30 fully synthetic engine oil when the temperature in your region is above -30°C.
- › When your local temperature is less than the above value, please use the C3 0W-30 fully synthetic engine oil.

For vehicles not equipped with DPF (particulate filter), if you use API (American Petroleum Institute) standard oil, the following specifications of fully synthetic engine oil are recommended:

| Item | Data | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| Ambient temperature | Above -20°C | Above -30°C | Lower temperature |
| Quality grade | CI-4 and higher | CI-4 and higher | CI-4 and higher |

Overall parameters

| Item | Data | | |
|-----------------|--------|-------|-------|
| Viscosity grade | 15W-40 | 5W-40 | 0W-40 |

For vehicles not equipped with DPF (particulate filter), if you choose ACEA (European Automobile Manufacturers' Association) standard oil, the recommendations are as follows:

- › Use A3/B4 5W-40 fully synthetic oil when the temperature in your region is above -30°C.
- › Use A3/B4 0W-40 fully synthetic oil when the temperature in your region is below the above value.

GW4D20M engine oil

To ensure the performance and the service life of the engine, we recommend you to use the engine oil recommended by the OEM. If the genuine engine oil cannot be purchased in your area, we recommend you to use the following engine oil.

For vehicles with Euro V or higher emission standard and equipped with DPF (particulate filter), the recommendations are as follows:

- › Use the C3 5W-30 fully synthetic engine oil when the temperature in your region is above -25°C.
- › When your local temperature is less than the above value, please use the C3 0W-30 fully synthetic engine oil.

For vehicles not equipped with DPF (particulate filter), if you use API (American Petroleum Institute) standard oil, the following specifications of fully synthetic engine oil are recommended:

| Item | Data | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| Ambient temperature | Above -20°C | Above -25°C | Lower temperature |
| Quality grade | CI-4 and higher | CI-4 and higher | CI-4 and higher |
| Viscosity grade | 15W-40 | 5W-40 | 0W-40 |

For vehicles not equipped with DPF (particulate filter), if you choose ACEA (European Automobile Manufacturers' Association) standard oil, the recommendations are as follows:

- › Use A3/B4 5W-40 fully synthetic oil when the temperature in your region is above -25°C.

Overall parameters

- › Use A3/B4 0W-40 fully synthetic oil when the temperature in your region is below the above value.

GW4C20B engine oil

To ensure the performance and the service life of the engine, we recommend you to use the engine oil recommended by the OEM. If the genuine engine oil cannot be purchased in your area, refer to the following table to select a kind of fully synthetic oil (quality grade + viscosity grade) with medium-low ash content, which meets API (American Petroleum Institute) standards.

| Item | Data | |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Ambient temperature | Above -30°C | Lower temperature |
| Quality grade | SN or higher | SN or higher |
| Viscosity grade | 5W-30 | 0W-30 |

If you choose an oil product in conformity with the ACEA (European Automobile Manufacturers' Association) standard, our suggestions are as follows:

- › Use the C2 5W-30 fully synthetic engine oil when the temperature in your region is above -30°C.
- › When your local temperature is less than the above value, please use the C2 0W-30 fully synthetic engine oil.

Engine oil capacity

| Engine model | Capacity [L] (reference value) |
|--------------|--|
| GW4D24 | 5.5 ± 0.1 (replace oil only) |
| | 5.8 ± 0.1 (replace oil and oil filter element) |
| GW4D20M | 4.7 ± 0.1 (replace oil only) |
| | 5.0 ± 0.1 (replace oil and oil filter element) |
| GW4C20B | 4.5 ± 0.1 (replace oil only) |
| | 4.9 ± 0.1 (replace oil and oil filter) |

Other types of fluids

| Fluid type | Specifications | Capacity [L] (reference value) |
|------------------------|----------------|--|
| Transmission oil (9AT) | GWM ATF 9 | 6 (recommended filling amount for maintenance) |

Overall parameters

| Fluid type | Specifications | Capacity [L] (reference value) |
|--|---|--|
| Transmission oil (6MT) | GL-4 75W-80 | 2.8 ± 0.1 |
| Front main reducer oil (without differential lock) | DUAL 9 FE 75W-90 | 1.05 ± 0.05 |
| Front main reducer oil (with differential lock) | DUAL 9 FE 75W-90 | 0.9 ± 0.05 |
| Rear main reducer oil | DUAL 9 FE 75W-90 | 2.4 ± 0.1 |
| Transfer case oil (intelligent electronic control 4WD) | Mercon LV(44-00-244-015) | 1.3 ± 0.1 (recommended filling amount for maintenance) |
| Transfer case oil (GW4D24 engine + electronic control part-time 4WD) | Dexron III | 1.5 ± 0.1 (recommended filling amount for maintenance) |
| Transfer case oil (GW4D20M, GW4C20B engine + electronic control part-time 4WD) | Dexron III | 1.3 ± 0.1 (recommended filling amount for maintenance) |
| Brake fluid | DOT4 | 0.98 ± 0.1 |
| Power steering fluid | FLUIDE DA | 1.1 ± 0.1 |
| Coolant (GW4D24 engine) | Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (for regions other than alpine regions) Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (for alpine regions) | 8.7 ± 0.5 (recommended filling amount for maintenance) |
| Coolant (GW4D20M engine + 600W fan) | Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (for regions other than alpine regions) Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (for alpine regions) | 8.2 ± 0.5 (recommended filling amount for maintenance) |

Overall parameters

| Fluid type | Specifications | Capacity [L] (reference value) |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| Coolant (GW4D20M engine + +850W fan) | Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (for regions other than alpine regions) Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (for alpine regions) | 8.7 ± 0.5 (recommended filling amount for maintenance) |
| Coolant (GW4C20B engine) | Ethylene glycol-based No. 35 (for regions other than alpine regions) Ethylene glycol-based No. 45 (for alpine regions) | 7.8 ± 0.5 (recommended filling amount for maintenance) |
| Windscreen washer fluid | -- | 2.8 ± 0.2 |

i NOTICE

The actual amount of the above fluid may slightly vary with the products, equipment and climate factors.

8

Index

Alphabetical index..... 342

Alphabetical index

Symbols

4WD system (electronic control part-time 4WD) 144

A

A/C outlets 86

A/C setting interface 81

A/C system 83

About the key 26

AdBlue injection control system 201

Airbag

Far-end side airbag 260

Front airbags 256

Side airbag 258

Airbags

Curtain airbags 259

All-terrain control system 138

Anti-lock brake system 194

B

Battery 310

Blind spot imaging system 157

Bluetooth phone 240

Bonnet 46

Bottle holders 92

Brake fluid 308

Brake parameters 336

Braking force assist system 195

Break-in period 112

C

Catalytic converter 199

Child safety lock 32

Crankcase emission control unit 200

Cruise control 163

Cup holder 92

D

Diesel particulate filter 201

Differential lock

Differential lock introduction 147

Front axle differential lock 149

Rear axle differential lock 147

Door locks

Emergency lock 32

Locking and unlocking through the PEPS 30

Locking and unlocking with central control buttons 31

Locking and unlocking with key buttons 31

Locking and unlocking with the mechanical key 32

Unlocking with the interior handle 31

Driving mode (electronic control part-time 4WD) 134

Driving mode (intelligent electronic control 4WD) 132

Dynamic stability tracing system 197

E

Electric winch 294

Electronic braking force distribution system 195

Electronic parking brake 120

Electronic stability control system 196

Emergency rescue system 299

Engine compartment 305

Engine coolant 308

Engine oil 306

Engine overheating 288

Event data recorder 270

Exterior maintenance 323

Alphabetical index

F

Fatigue driving reminder system 161
Fixing points for a child seat 263
Fluid level 305
Fluid parameters 336
Front wiper blade replacement (type I) 315
Front wiper blade replacement (type II) 316
Fuel cut-off system 269
Fuse replacement 313

G

Gasoline particulate filter 204
Gear shifting (automatic transmission)
 Gear shifting 127
 Introduction to gear positions 126
 Starting off and stopping 130
 Unlocking P gear position in an emergency 128
Gear shifting (MT)
 Gear shifting method 123
 Introduction to gear positions 123
 Starting off and stopping 124
Glove box 90

H

Headrests 54
HHC (Hill-start hold control) 195
Hill descent control system (HDC) 196
Horn 65

I

Indicator lights 218
Installation of a child seat 265
Instrument panel
 Driving data interface 208,214

Instrument panel colour setting 211,216
Instrument panel overview 206,212
Menu setting interface 209,215
Steering wheel buttons 207,213
Warning message interface 210,215

Intelligent driver assist system

 Adaptive cruise control 178
 Front assist 169
 Intelligent cruise control 183
 Lane assist 172
 Rear side assist 174
 Traffic sign 177

Intelligent driving assist system

 Sensor 166

Interior maintenance 326

Interior rearview mirror

 Automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror 61
 Manual anti-glare interior rearview mirror 61

J

Jump start method 286

K

Key battery replacement 27

L

Light control

 Daytime running light 73
 Front fog lights auxiliary lighting 73
 Hazard warning lights 73
 Headlight height adjustment 74
 Interior lights 74
 Light control combination switch 69
 Light settings 68
Local media 238

Alphabetical index

Location of on-board tools 274

Luggage hook 93

M

Manual parking brake 119

Mobile phone interaction 241

Mobile phone wireless charging 88

Multimedia home 236

Multimedia shortcut panel 237

Multimedia status bar icon 235

Multimedia system setting 245

O

Off-road cruise control assist 189

Off-road expert mode 143

On-board diagnostic system 200

Opening and closing the tailgate 34

Oxygen sensor 199

P

Parking assist system

 Around view monitor (AVM) 154

 Collision avoidance radar 153

 Parking setting 156

 Reverse camera 153

 Sensor 151

Power parameters 334

Power steering fluid 309

Power supply mode switching 114

Power supply port 93

Protection films for new vehicles 323

R

Radiator and fan 310

Recommended child seat type 263

Refuelling 48

Replacing the spare tyre 279

Rollover prevention system 195

Roof rack 66

S

Seat belt 251

Seats

 Electric seat adjustment 56

 Front armrest 57

 Front seat heating or ventilation 53

 Manual seat adjustment 55

 Rear seat adjustment (integral type) 57

 Rear seat adjustment (split type) 59

Secondary collision mitigation system 195

Side mirrors 61

Starting the vehicle 116

Steering assist 192

Steering wheel adjustment 64

Steering wheel assist 131

Steering wheel heating 64

Steering wheel unlock 115

Storage case 91

Sunglasses case 91

Sunroof

 Opening and closing the sunroof 43

 Opening and closing the sunroof visor 44

 Sunroof initialisation 45

Sunroof maintenance 322

Sun visor 90

Suspension specifications 335

T

Tailgate footboard 35

Taking out and replacing the spare tyre 277

Tow hook 291

Alphabetical index

Towing 290
Traction control system 195
Turbocharger 200
Tyre maintenance 319
Tyre pressure monitoring system
(TPMS) 159
Tyre specifications 334

V

Vanity mirror 90
Vehicle anti-theft system 268
Vehicle identification number 332
Vehicle lifting position 276
Voice control 243

W

Warning lights 218
Wheel parameters 335
Windows
 Anti-pinch function 41
 Delay function 41
 Driver's window switch 39
 Window initialisation 41
 Window setting 39
Windscreen washer fluid 309
Wiper control
 Auto wipers 76
 Front wiper heating 80